



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



INTRODUCTORY
LATIN GRAMMAR.



LEON SCHMITZ LL.D.



COLLINS' SCHOOL SERIES

Educational Publications of Wm. Collins, Sons, & Co., Limited.

COLLINS' ELEMENTARY AND ADVANCED SCIENCE SERIES,

Adapted to the requirements of the South Kensington Syllabus, for Students in Science and Art Classes, and Higher and Middle Class Schools.

ELEMENTARY SERIES.

In Fcap. 8vo, fully Illustrated, cloth lettered, price 1s. each volume.

1. PRACTICAL PLANE AND SOLID GEOMETRY By H. ANGEL, Islington Science School, London.
2. MACHINE CONSTRUCTION AND DRAWING By E. TOMKINS. Vol. I. Text, Vol. II. Plates.
- 3A BUILDING CONSTRUCTION—Stone, Brick, and Slate Work. By R. S. BURN, C.E. Vol. I. Text, Vol. II. Plates.
- 3B BUILDING CONSTRUCTION—Timber and Iron Work. By R. S. BURN, C.E. Vol. I. Text, Vol. II. Plates.
- 4A NAVAL ARCHITECTURE—Laying Off. By S. J. P. THEARLE, F.R.S.N.A., London. Vol. I. Text, 1s. Vol. II. Plates, 2s.
- 4B NAVAL ARCHITECTURE—Wood and Iron Shipbuilding. By S. J. P. THEARLE. Vol. I. Text, 1s. Vol. II. Plates, 2s.
5. PURE MATHEMATICS. By L. SERGEANT, B.A. (Camb.).
6. THEORETICAL MECHANICS.
7. APPLIED MECHANICS. By W. ROSSITER, F.R.A.S.
8. ACOUSTICS, LIGHT, AND HEAT. By WILLIAM LEES, A.M.
9. MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY. By JOHN ANGELL, Manchester.
10. INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By Dr. W. B. KEMSHEAD, F.R.A.S.
11. ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By W. MARSHALL WATTS, D.Sc.
12. GEOLOGY. By W. S. DAVIS, LL.D., Derby.
13. MINERALOGY. By J. H. COLLINS, F.G.S., Falmouth.
14. ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY. By JOHN ANGELL, Manchester.
15. ZOOLOGY. By M. HARBISON, Newtonards.
16. VEGETABLE ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY. By Professor BALFOUR.
17. SYSTEMATIC AND ECONOMIC BOTANY. By Professor BALFOUR.
- 18A PRINCIPLES OF MINING—Coal. By J. H. COLLINS, F.G.S.
- 18B PRINCIPLES OF MINING—Iron. By J. H. COLLINS, F.G.S.
20. NAVIGATION. By HENRY EVERE, LL.D., Plymouth.
21. NAUTICAL ASTRONOMY. By HENRY EVERE, LL.D.
- 22A STEAM AND THE STEAM ENGINE—Land and Marine. By Dr. EVERE.
- 22B STEAM ENGINE—Locomotive. By H. EVERE, LL.D.
23. PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By JOHN MACTRURK, F.R.G.S.
24. PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY. By JOHN HOWARD, London.
25. ASTRONOMY. By J. J. PLUMMER, Observatory, Durham.
26. MANUAL OF QUALITATIVE CHEMICAL ANALYSIS. By F. BEILSTEIN.

Extra Volumes, Post 8vo, Cloth, 1s. 6d.

APPLIED MECHANICS. By HENRY EVERE, LL.D.

MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY. Enlarged Edition. By J. ANGELL.

THEORETICAL MECHANICS. By J. H. MACGINLEY, Glasgow Univ.

INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By W. B. KEMSHEAD.

ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY. By JOHN ANGELL.

GENERAL BIOLOGY. By J. H. MACGINLEY.

AGRICULTURAL CHEMISTRY. By J. MACGINTON, 2s.

London, Edinburgh,

Glasgow.

ADVANCED SCIENCE SERIES,

Adapted to the requirements of the South Kensington Syllabus, for Students in Science and Art Classes, and Higher and Middle Class Schools.

Post 8vo, fully Illustrated, cloth lettered, price 2s. 6d. each volume, except otherwise specified.

1. PRACTICAL PLANE AND SOLID GEOMETRY. By H. ANGEL, Islington Science School, London. 2 vols. *In the Press.*
2. MACHINE CONSTRUCTION AND DRAWING. By E. TOMKINS. Vol. I. Text, 3s. 6d. Vol. II. Plates, 7s.
- 3A BUILDING CONSTRUCTION—Brick and Stone, &c. By R. S. BURN, C.E. Vol. I. Text, 2s. 6d. Vol. II. Plates, 5s.
- 3B BUILDING CONSTRUCTION—Timber and Iron, &c. By R. S. BURN, C.E. Vol. I. Text, 2s. 6d. Vol. II. Plates, 4s.
- 4A PRACTICAL NAVAL ARCHITECTURE—Laying Off and Shipbuilding. By S. J. P. THEARLE, F.R.S.N.A., London. Vol. I. Text, 2s. 6d. Vol. II. Plates, 5s.
- 4B THEORETICAL NAVAL ARCHITECTURE. By S. J. P. THEARLE, F.R.S.N.A., London. Vol. I. Text, 3s. 6d. Vol. II. Plates, 7s.
5. PURE MATHEMATICS. By E. ATKINS, Leicester. 2 vols.
8. ACOUSTICS, LIGHT, AND HEAT. By WILLIAM LEES, A.M.
9. MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY. By F. GUTHRIE, B.A., Ph.D., Royal School of Mines, London. 3s.
- 10A INORGANIC CHEMISTRY—Vol. I. Non-Metals. By Professor T. E. THORPE, Ph.D., F.R.S.E., Yorkshire College of Science, Leeds. 3s.
- 10B INORGANIC CHEMISTRY—Vol. II. Metals. By Prof. T. E. THORPE, Ph.D., F.R.S.E., Yorkshire College of Science, Leeds. 3s.
13. MINERALOGY. By J. H. COLLINS, F.G.S., Falmouth. 2 vols.
14. ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY. By J. CLELAND, M.D., F.R.S., Professor of Anatomy, Glasgow University.
- 19A METALLURGY—Vol. I. Fuel, Iron, Steel, Tin, Antimony, Arsenic, Bismuth, and Platinum. By W. H. GREENWOOD, A.R.S.M.
- 19B METALLURGY—Vol. II. Copper, Lead, Zinc, Mercury, Silver, Gold, Nickel, Cobalt, and Aluminium. By W. H. GREENWOOD, A.R.S.M.
20. NAVIGATION. By HENRY EVERES, LL.D., Newcastle-upon-Tyne.
22. STEAM AND THE STEAM ENGINE—Land, Marine, and Locomotive. By HENRY EVERES, LL.D., Newcastle-upon-Tyne. 3s.
23. PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By JOHN YOUNG, M.D., Professor of Natural History, Glasgow University.

A R T S S E R I E S.

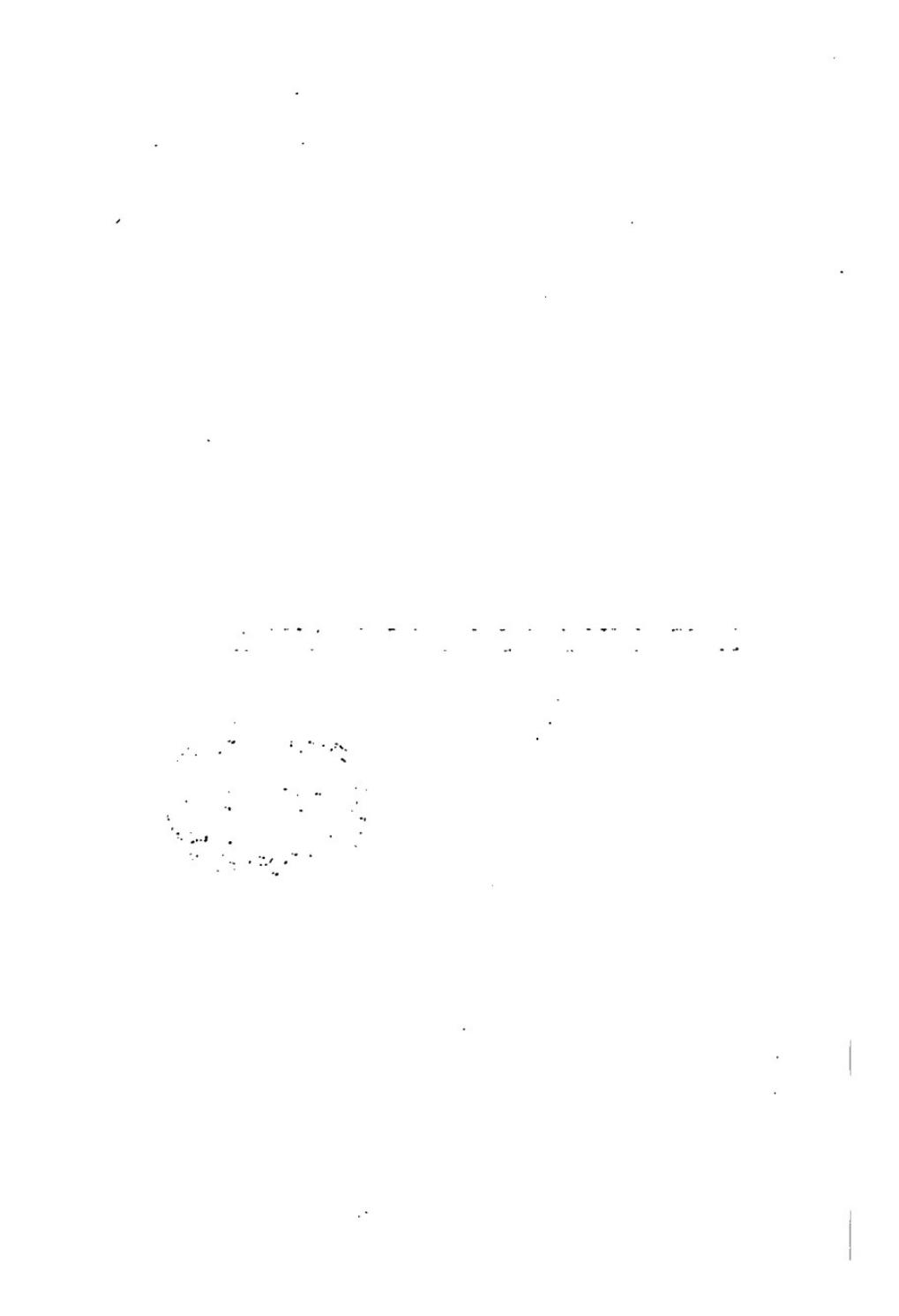
PRACTICAL PLANE GEOMETRY, with 72 Plates, and Letterpress Description. By E. S. BURCHETT, National Art Training Schools, South Kensington, &c. Royal 8vo, cloth, 6s. 6d.

PRACTICAL PLANE GEOMETRY, with 72 Plates, and Letterpress Description. By E. S. BURCHETT, National Art Training Schools, South Kensington, &c. Cheap edition, cloth limp, 4s. 6d.



600096253V

INTRODUCTORY LATIN GRAMMAR.



INTRODUCTORY GRAMMAR

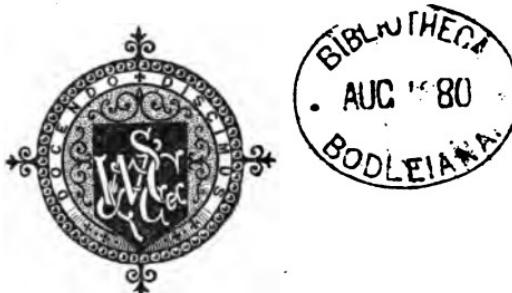
OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE.

BY

LEONHARD SCHMITZ, LL.D.,

LATE CLASSICAL EXAMINER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON, ETC.



LONDON AND GLASGOW:
WM. COLLINS, SONS, & COMPANY, LIMITED.

1880.

[All rights reserved.]

305 . g . 125 .



P R E F A C E.

THE present Grammar, though essentially an abridgement of the larger work published in Messrs. Collins' School Series, has in some parts been modified, and even extended, where the interest of the beginner seemed to require it. The principles followed in the former work have been strictly adhered to in the present, which will be found to contain all the information about the Latin language that a student can be expected to possess when he enters upon the study of an easy Latin author. The chief object has been to present to the young student only the leading facts of the language, as seen in the best authors, in a precise and intelligible form, without any discussion about varieties of forms and expressions occurring in the early and late, or non-classical authors. It has been thought advisable in this Introductory Grammar, as well as in the larger work, not to alter the traditional nomenclature and arrangement, for correct scientific information can be given without introducing changes which often confuse rather than enlighten the young student.

Mr. G. F. H. Sykes' *Introductory Exercises in Latin Composition* may be used as a very suitable companion to the present Grammar.

L. S.

LONDON, February, 1880.



CONTENTS.



PART I.—THE ACCIDENCE.

CHAPTER	PAGE
I.—THE ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION,	9
II.—THE PARTS OF SPEECH,	10
III.—SUBSTANTIVES AND THEIR GENDERS,	12
IV.—THE DECLENSIONS IN GENERAL,	13
V.—THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION,	14
VI.—THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION,	16
VII.—THE THIRD OR Consonant DECLENSION,	18
VIII.—REMARKS ON SOME CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION,	26
IX.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION,	27
X.—THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION,	29
XI.—PECULIARITIES AND IRREGULARITIES IN THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES,	30
XII.—ADJECTIVES AND THEIR DECLENSION,	32
XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES,	34
XIV.—THE NUMERALS,	37
XV.—THE PRONOUNS,	41
XVI.—THE VERB IN GENERAL,	46
XVII.—THE VERB <i>Esse</i> , TO BE,	51
XVIII.—THE FIRST OR A CONJUGATION, THE SECOND OR E CONJUGATION, THE THIRD OR Consonant CONJUGATION, THE FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION,	54 59 64 69
XIX.—DEONENT VERBS,	73
XX.—CONTRACTED VERBAL FORMS,	76
XXI.—IRREGULARITIES OF VERBS IN GENERAL AND OF THOSE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION,	76
XXII.—VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION,	78
XXIII.—VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION,	80
XXIV.—VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION,	87

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXV.—DEONENT VERBS,	88
XXVI.—IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS,	89
XXVII.—IMPERSONAL VERBS,	101
XXVIII.—ADVERBS,	103
XXIX.—PREPOSITIONS,	105
XXX.—CONJUNCTIONS,	107
XXXI.—INTERJECTIONS,	108

PART II.—SYNTAX.

XXXII.—SUBJECT AND PREDICATE—ATTRIBUTE—APPENDIX—RELATIVE PRONOUN,	109
XXXIII.—THE NOMINATIVE,	114
XXXIV.—THE ACCUSATIVE,	114
XXXV.—THE DATIVE,	119
XXXVI.—THE GENITIVE,	123
XXXVII.—THE ABLATIVE,	129
XXXVIII.—THE VOCATIVE,	135
XXXIX.—ADJECTIVES,	136
XL.—PRONOUNS,	138
XLI.—THE VERB, ITS VOICES AND MOODS IN GENERAL,	140
XLII.—THE INDICATIVE MOOD AND ITS TENSES,	141
XLIII.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD AND ITS TENSES,	145
XLIV.—THE IMPERATIVE,	158
XLV.—THE INFINITIVE,	159
XLVI.—THE GERUND AND THE GERUNDIVE,	164
XLVII.—THE SUPINE,	165
XLVIII.—THE PARTICIPLES,	166

APPENDIX.

I.—ROMAN NAMES,	169
II.—THE ROMAN CALENDAR,	170

ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR.

PART I.—THE ACCIDENCE.

CHAPTER I.

THE ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION.

§ 1. The Latin alphabet consists of twenty-one letters, viz., *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i (j), k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, v (u), x*.

Five of them, *a, e, i, o, and u*, are vowels, and the remaining sixteen are consonants.

With the Romans the letter *i* was used for both *i* and *j*, and *v* was used both for *v* and *u*.

Note.—The letters *y* and *z* occur only in words adopted from the Greek.

§ 2. The vowels were pronounced by the Romans as they are still in Italian, *i.e.*, with their full and open sound.

The *v*, when followed by a vowel, was pronounced like the English *v* or *w*, as in *vir, vallum*; but when followed by a consonant, it was pronounced as the vowel *u*.

In like manner the *i*, when followed by a vowel, was pronounced like the English *y* in *young, yet*, hence *juvenis = yuvenis*; in all other cases it was pronounced like the English *i* in *hit, bid*.

Note.—In order to facilitate reading, the *i* and *j*, and *v* and *u*, are often kept distinct in modern books.

The diphthongs in Latin are *ae, au, ei, eu, oe, oi*, and *ui*; but *ei, oi, ui* occur very rarely.

§ 3. The consonants were probably pronounced as they

are written, and in the same manner under all circumstances. Thus *c* was always pronounced as *k*, and the *g* as the English *g* in *good*, *gift*, *gang*. The *t* also was always pronounced as the English *t* in *tin*, *tan*, *tomb*.

The letter *x* is a double consonant, being a combination of *c* or *g* with *s*.

The consonant *k* is used only in a few words, where it is followed by *a*, as *kalendae*, *Kaeso*, *Karthago*.

The letter *q* is never used without a *u* after it, together with which we pronounce it like *ku*, as *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, though the Romans appear to have pronounced the two letters like a simple *k*, as is still the case in French.

§ 4. In pronouncing Latin words a distinction must be made between syllables which are long and those which are short. Long are those which contain a long vowel or a diphthong, and those in which a vowel, though naturally short, is followed by two or more consonants, in which case the vowel is said to be long by position. A vowel followed by another vowel is generally short. Single vowels may be long or short; when long they are often marked thus—*ā*, *ē*, *ī*, *ō*, *ū*; when short thus—*ă*, *ĕ*, *ĭ*, *ŏ*, *û*.

§ 5. Words of two syllables always have the emphasis or accent on the first. In words of more than two syllables the accent falls on the last but one, if it be long, as, *Románus*; but if the last syllable but one be short, and the one preceding it long, this latter has the accent, as *Rómulus*, *amávérat*. When both the second and third last syllable are short, the accent is put upon the third last, as in *mílier*. No Latin word has the accent on the last syllable.

CHAPTER II.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 6. All the words of the Latin language are divided into nine classes, commonly called the parts of speech. They are:—

1. **Substantives**, names of persons or things: as *homo*, a man; *puer*, a boy; *Carolus*, Charles; *Athenae*, Athena.
2. **Adjectives**, names of qualities or attributes belonging to persons or things: as *bonus*, good; *malus*, bad; *fortis*, brave; *audax*, daring.
3. **Pronouns** are so called, because some of them stand for or represent the names of persons or things: as *ego*, I; *tu*, thou; *ille*, he or that one; *id*, it, etc.
4. **Numerals** express the number of persons or things, and other relations of number: as *una*, one; *duo*, two; *tres*, three; *decem*, ten; *bis*, twice; *prima*, the first, etc.
5. **Verbs** express an action, a state, or a condition in which a person or thing is: as *scribo*, I write; *curro*, I run; *dormio*, I sleep.
6. **Adverbs** qualify the ideas expressed by verba, adjectives, and other adverbs: as *bene*, well; *male*, badly; *diligenter*, diligently; *diu*, long; *saepe*, often.
7. **Conjunctions** connect words and sentences: as *et*, and; *vel*, or; *sed*, but; *ut*, that.
8. **Prepositions** express the relations in which persons, things, or actions stand to others: as *ab*, from; *in*, in; *sub*, under; *super*, over; *ante*, before; *post*, after.
9. **Interjections** are mostly mere exclamatory sounds, expressive of joy, grief, wonder, amazement, etc.: as *hui!* alas !

NOTE.—The Latin language has no article, so that *homo* may mean man, a man, or the man; but the context always shows how it ought to be translated.

§ 7. **Substantives, adjectives, pronouns**, and many numerals, are capable of inflection; that is, they can change their terminations to indicate gender, number, and case. This inflection is called *Declension*.

§ 8. Verbs are capable of inflection, and their inflection is called *Conjugation*.

The remaining parts of speech, and many numerals, are not capable of any inflection, but remain the same in all circumstances.

§ 9. In declension and conjugation the changeable part of a word must be carefully distinguished from the part which remains unchanged. This latter is called the **Stem**, e.g., *pleb-s*, *pleb-is*, *pleb-e*, where *s*, *is*, and *e* are the inflections or terminations, and *pleb* the stem; *audi-o*, *audi-vi*, *audi-tum*, *audi-re*, where the stem is *audi*, and the terminations are *o*, *vi*, *tum*, and *re*.

CHAPTER III.

SUBSTANTIVES AND THEIR GENDERS.

§ 10. Substantives are names given to persons or things, because they have certain qualities or properties in common, and such names are called **common nouns**; but if they are names belonging to only one person or thing, they are called **proper names**. Thus, *equus*, a horse, *canis*, a dog, *homo*, a man, are common nouns; but *Cæsar*, *Vesuvius*, *Roma*, *Tiberis*, are proper names.

§ 11. Common nouns again are either **concrete** or **abstract** nouns, the former denoting things which we perceive by means of our senses, and the latter those things which we conceive only by the mind as distinct existences. Thus, *domus*, a house, *arbor*, a tree, are names of concrete things; but *virtus*, manliness, *justitia*, justice, *venustas*, beauty, are abstract nouns.

§ 12. All substantives are either of the masculine, feminine, or neuter gender. The gender of any given substantive may be ascertained partly from its meaning, and partly from its termination. The following are the general rules about gender.

1. **Masculine** are the names of male beings, of rivers, of winds, and of months, except the rivers *Albula*, *Allia*, *Letha*, *Matrona*, and *Styx*, which are feminine.
2. **Feminine** are the names of female beings, and most of the names of towns, trees, countries, islands, and precious stones.
3. **Neuter** are all indeclinable nouns, and such words as, without being real substantives, are used as such.

NOTE.—Some substantives denoting living beings have two forms, one for the male and the other for the female: as *filius*, a son, and *filia*, a daughter; *rex*, a king, and *regina*, a queen; *avus*, a grandfather, and *avia*, a grandmother; *lupus*, a wolf, and *lupa*, a she-wolf; *equus*, a horse, and *equa*, a mare. But most names of animals have only one form for both the male and the female; and when the sex is to be specially indicated, it is done by the addition of the words *mas* (male) and *femina* (female).

CHAPTER IV.

THE DECLENSIONS.

§ 13. Declension consists of certain changes in the termination of nouns, to express the relations in which they stand to other words in a sentence. Such relations are generally expressed in English by prepositions: as *patr-is domus*, the father's house, or the house of the father; *patr-i*, to or for a father; *patr-e*, from, by, or with a father.

§ 14. There are in Latin six relations which can be expressed by terminations, that is, there are six cases, viz. :—

1. The **Nominative**, denoting the person or thing spoken of, that is, the subject of a sentence: as *equus currit*, the horse runs.
2. The **Genitive**, denoting the class or genus to which a thing belongs, and several other relations which are expressed in English by prepositions: as *arma militi-is*, the arms of a soldier; *amor patriae*, the love of one's country.
3. The **Dative**, denoting the person to whom, or for whose advantage or disadvantage anything is, or is done. In English this relation is generally expressed by the preposition to or for: as *ostendit filio*, he shows to the son; *liber puer utilis est*, the book is useful to a boy; *patri consulit*, he gives advice to the father.
4. The **Accusative**, denoting the object towards which an action is directed: as *magister docet puerum*, the master teaches the boy.
5. The **Vocative** is used in addressing a person or a thing: as *O dii immortales*, O ye immortal gods!
6. The **Ablative** expresses various relations, as those of separation, cause, manner, instrument, time, place, etc., which are expressed in English by the prepositions from, by, with, in, at, etc.

§ 15. Latin, like English substantives, have two numbers, the **Singular** and the **Plural**; and in each number they have the six cases mentioned above.

§ 16. All substantives are declined in one of five ways,

whence it is said that there are **Five Declensions**. Words of which the genitive singular ends in *æ* are said to belong to the first declension, those of which the genitive ends in *i* to the second, those of which the genitive ends in *is* to the third, those of which the genitive ends in *us* to the fourth, and those of which the genitive ends in *et* to the fifth.

§ 17. There are some points in which all declensions are the same, namely :—

1. The Vocative, with few exceptions, is, in all declensions, like the Nominative.
2. The Nominative is often formed by adding *s* to the stem; but no neuter substantive takes *s* as the sign of the Nominative.
3. The Accusative Singular always ends in *m*, as in the English *him* and *whom*, from *he* and *who*.
4. The Accusative Plural always ends in *s*, preceded by a long vowel.
5. The Ablative Singular, in all declensions except the third, ends in a long vowel *a*, *o*, *u*, or *e*; but in the third it ends in *ā*.
6. The Dative Plural is always like the Ablative Plural.
7. All Neuter nouns are the same in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative singular; and in the plural these three cases always end in *ā*.

CHAPTER V.

THE FIRST OR *A* DECLENSION.

§ 18. Latin nouns, both substantive and adjective, belonging to this declension, have a stem ending in *a*, which is at the same time their nominative. They are all of the feminine gender, except those which denote males: as *poëta*, a poet; *nauta*, a sailor; *agricola*, a husbandman, and others, which are masculine.

EXAMPLE.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. & Voc.	Mensā (stem <i>mensea</i>), a table.	Mensae, tables.
Gen.	Mensae, of a table.	Mensā-rum, of tables.
Dat.	Mensae, to a table.	Mensās, to tables.
Acc.	Mensa-m, a table.	Mensā-s, tables.
Abl.	Mensā, from, with, or by a table.	Mensās, from, with, or by tables.

Words for Exercise.

Via, a way; *ara*, an altar; *peina*, a feather; *elva*, a wood; *hora*, an hour; *femina*, a woman; *porta*, a gate; *nauta*, a sailor; *tabula*, a tablet.

NOTE 1.—The final *a* of the stem disappears in some of the cases; this arises from contraction of the *a* with the initial vowel of the termination.

NOTE 2.—The dative and ablative plural of some substantives end in *-bus* instead of *-is*, to distinguish them from the masculine forms, which belong to the second declension: as *filius*, dative and ablative plural *filia-bus*. So also *dea*, a goddess; *equa*, a mare; *liberte*, a freed-woman; and *duae* (two) and *ambas* (both), which make *duabus* and *ambabus*.

Greek Words of the First Declension.

§ 19. Some Greek feminine nouns ending in *ē*, and several masculines ending in *ās* and *ēs*, chiefly proper names and patronymics, follow the first declension, though in poetry they often retain their Greek terminations in preference to the Latin.

EXAMPLES.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. & Voc.	Epitōmē, an abridgment.	Epitomae, abridgments.
G.	Epitomē-s, of an abridgment.	Epitomā-rum, of abridgements.
D.	Epitomēs, to an abridgment.	Epitomīs, to abridgments.
Ac.	Epitomē-n, an abridgment.	Epitomā-s, abridgments.
Ab.	Epitomē, from, with, or by an abridgment.	Epitomīs, from, with, or by abridgments.

Singular.

	<i>Singular.</i>
Nom.	Aenās.
Gen.	Aenāe.
Dat.	Aenāe.
Acc.	Aenā-m or Aenā-n.
Voc.	Aenā.
Abl.	Aenā.

Singular.

Anchisā,
Anchisae.
Anchisae.
Anchise-n or Anchisa-m.
Anchisē or Anchisā.
Anchisē or Anchisā.

Words for Exercise.

Crambe, cabbage; Circe, Daphne, Penelope, Boreas, Gorgias, Pythagoras, Pelides, Priamides, Tydides.

CHAPTER VI.

THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION.

§ 20. All nouns, both substantive and adjective, of which the stem ends in *o*, belong to the second declension. Their genitive singular ends in *ī*. The nominative ends in *us* (anciently *os*), *er*, or *um*. Those ending in *us* and *er* are masculine, and those ending in *um* are neuter.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	<i>Annū-s,</i>	a year.	<i>Anni,</i> years.
G.	<i>Annī,</i>	of a year.	<i>Annō-rum,</i> of years.
D.	<i>Annō,</i>	to a year.	<i>Annis,</i> to years.
Ac.	<i>Annu-m,</i>	a year.	<i>Annō-s,</i> years.
V.	<i>Annō,</i>	O year!	<i>Anni,</i> O years!
Ab.	<i>Annō,</i> from, with, or by	a year.	<i>Annis,</i> from, with, or by years.
N. & V. <i>Puēr,</i>		a boy.	<i>Pueri,</i> boys.
G.	<i>Puerī,</i>	of a boy.	<i>Puerō-rum,</i> of boys.
D.	<i>Puerō,</i>	to a boy.	<i>Pueris,</i> to boys.
Ac.	<i>Pueru-m,</i>	a boy.	<i>Puerō-s,</i> boys.
Ab.	<i>Puerō,</i> from, with, or by	a boy.	<i>Pueria,</i> from, with, or by boys.
N. & V. <i>Agrō,</i>		a field.	<i>Agrī,</i> fields.
G.	<i>Agrī,</i>	of a field.	<i>Agrō-rum,</i> of fields.
D.	<i>Agrō,</i>	to a field.	<i>Agris,</i> to fields.
Ac.	<i>Agrū-m,</i>	a field.	<i>Agrō-s,</i> fields.
Ab.	<i>Agrō,</i> from, with, or by	a field.	<i>Agris,</i> from, with, or by fields.
N., A., { <i>Templū-m,</i> a temple. & V.		<i>Templī,</i>	temples.
G.	<i>Templī,</i>	of a temple.	<i>Templō-rum,</i> of temples.
D.	<i>Templō,</i>	to a temple.	<i>Templīs,</i> to temples.
Ab.	<i>Templō,</i> from, with, or by	a temple.	<i>Templīs,</i> from, with, or by temples.

Words for Exercise.

Like *annus*, decline: *agnus*, a lamb; *hortus*, a garden; *corvus*, a raven; *digitus*, a finger; *equis*, a horse; *murus*, a wall; *servus*, a slave; and the masculine of all adjectives in *us*, as *bonus*, good; *malus*, bad; *magnus*, great.

Like *puer*, decline: *socer*, a father-in-law; *gener*, a son-in-law; *liberi* (plural), children; and the adjectives *asper*, rough; *liber*, free; *miser*, wretched; *tener*, tender.

Like *ager*, decline: *aper*, a boar; *cancer*, a crab; *caper*, a he-goat; *faber*, a smith; *littera*, a book.

Like *templum*, decline: *antrum*, a cave; *bellum*, a war; *donum*, a gift; *membrum*, a limb; *ovum*, an egg; *tergum*, the back.

The substantive *vir*, a man (and its compounds, *triunvir*, *decemvir*, *lēvir*, a brother-in-law, and *Trevir*), and the adjective *satur* (*a*, *um*), sated, are the only words in *ir* and *ur* that belong to the second declension.

NOTE 1.—In regard to gender, it must be remembered that, according to the general rule (§ 12), the names of towns, islands, trees, shrubs, and precious stones ending in *us* are feminine. To these must be added: *albus*, belly; *carbæsus*, linen; *humus*, earth; *vannus*, a corn-van. *Cotus*, distaff, is sometimes feminine and sometimes masculine.

NOTE 2.—The following substantives in *us* are neuter: *virus*, a juice; *pelagus*, the sea; and *vulgas*, the common people.

NOTE 3.—The final vowel *o* of the stem does not always appear. Thus the *u* in the forms ending in *us* and *um* represents an original *o*. In other cases the *o* is contracted with the initial vowel of the stem.

NOTE 4.—The stem of words in *er* ends in *ero*; but, as in the case of *ager*, some nouns throw out the *e* in the oblique cases.

NOTE 5.—The following adjectives, the masculine and neuter of which follow the *o* declension, and the feminine the *a* declension, have in all genders the ending *ius* for the genitive, and *i* for the dative singular; but in all the other cases they follow the ordinary first and second declensions:—

Nominative.	Genitive.	Dative.
<i>Unus</i> , <i>una</i> , <i>unum</i> (one),	<i>unius</i> ,	<i>uni</i> .
<i>Solus</i> , <i>sola</i> , <i>solum</i> (alone),	<i>solus</i> ,	<i>solī</i> .
<i>Totus</i> , <i>tota</i> , <i>totum</i> (whole),	<i>totius</i> ,	<i>totī</i> .
<i>Ullus</i> , <i>ulla</i> , <i>ullum</i> (any),	<i>ullius</i> ,	<i>ullī</i> .
<i>Nullus</i> , <i>nulla</i> , <i>nullum</i> (none),	<i>nullius</i> ,	<i>nullī</i> .
<i>Alius</i> , <i>alia</i> , <i>aliud</i> (another),	<i>alius</i> ,	<i>aliī</i> .
<i>Alter</i> , <i>altera</i> , <i>alterum</i> (one of two),	<i>alterius</i> ,	<i>alterī</i> .
<i>Uter</i> , <i>utra</i> , <i>utrum</i> (which of two),	<i>utrius</i> ,	<i>utri</i> .
<i>Neuter</i> , <i>neutra</i> , <i>neutrum</i> (neither).	<i>neutrīus</i> ,	<i>neutrī</i> .

All compounds of these words, as *uterque* (each of two), *utervis* (either of two), *uterunque* and *uterlibet* (whichever of two), follow the same rule.

NOTE 6.—Nouns in *us* make their vocative in *s*; and proper names

ending in the nominative in *ius* contract the *i* of the vocative into *ī*: as *Iūsus*, vocative *Jūlī*; *Pompeius*, vocative *Pompei*; *Iunius*, vocative *Jūni*; *Valerius*, vocative *Valerī*. So also the common nouns *filius*, a son, vocative *filiī*; and *genius*, vocative *genī*. The possessive pronoun *mī* (my) makes the vocative *mī*, hence *mī filī*, my son; but *Deus*, God, remains *Deus*.

NOTE 7.—The declension of the word *Deus* (God) is as follows:—

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom. <i>Deus</i> ,	<i>God.</i>	<i>Dī</i> or <i>dī</i> ,	gods.
Gen. <i>Dei</i> ,	of <i>God.</i>	<i>Deo-rum</i> or <i>deūm</i> ,	of gods.
Dat. <i>Deō</i> ,	to <i>God.</i>	<i>Dīs</i> or <i>dīs</i> ,	to gods.
Acc. <i>Deu-m</i> ,	<i>God.</i>	<i>Deō-s</i> ,	goda.
Voc. <i>Deus</i> ,	O <i>God!</i>	<i>Dī</i> or <i>dī</i> ,	gods.
Abl. <i>Deō</i> ,	from, with, or by <i>God.</i>	<i>Dīs</i> or <i>dīs</i> ,	from, with, or by goda.

Greek Words of the Second Declension.

§ 21. Greek words of this declension end in the nominative singular in *os* or *on* (corresponding to the Latin *us* and *um*), and generally retain the *o* in the accusative: as *Parō* (an island in the Aegean), genitive *Pari*, dative *Parō*, accusative *Paron* or *Parum*, ablative *Parō*.

Greek proper names ending in *eus* may either be declined like Latin nouns in *us*, except that in the vocative they merely throw off the *s*, as *Prometheus*, vocative *Prometheū*; or they follow the third Greek declension, as nominative *Orpheus*, genitive *Orpheos*, dative *Orphēi*, accusative *Orpheā*, vocative *Orpheū*.

CHAPTER VII.

THE THIRD OR CONSONANT DECLENSION.

§ 22. All nouns of the third declension have a stem ending in a consonant or the vowel *i*. Many masculine and feminine nouns add an *s* to the stem to form the nominative, and this *s*, when preceded by other consonants, produces certain changes, which will be seen in the subjoined examples:—

§ 23. All nouns of the third declension may be divided into the following five classes:—

(1.) Masculine and feminine nouns, of which the nominative itself is the stem.

EXAMPLES.

1.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.&V. Läbör,	labour.	Labör-ës,	labours.
G. Labör-is,	of labour.	Labör-um,	of labours.
D. Labör-i,	to labour.	Labör-i-bus,	to labours.
A. Labör-em,	labour.	Labör-ës,	labours.
Ab. Labör-ë,	from, with, or by labour.	Labör-i-bus,	from, with, or by labours.

2.

N.&V. Arbör,	a tree.	Arbör-ës,	trees.
G. Arbör-is,	of a tree.	Arbör-um,	of trees.
D. Arbör-i,	to a tree.	Arbör-i-bus,	to trees.
A. Arbör-em,	a tree.	Arbör-ës,	trees.
Ab. Arbör-ë,	from with, or by a tree.	Arbör-i-bus,	from, with, or by trees.

3.

N.&V. Consil,	a consul.	Consil-ës,	consuls.
G. Consil-is,	of a consul.	Consil-um,	of consuls.
D. Consil-i,	to a consul.	Consil-i-bus,	to consuls.
A. Consil-em,	a consul.	Consil-ës,	consuls.
Ab. Consil-ë,	from, with, or by a consul.	Consil-i-bus,	from, with, or by consuls.

4.

N.&V. Ansér,	a goose.	Ansér-ës,	geese.
G. Ansér-is,	of a goose.	Ansér-um,	of geese.
D. Ansér-i,	to a goose.	Ansér-i-bus,	to geese.
A. Ansér-em,	a goose.	Ansér-ës,	geese.
Ab. Ansér-ë,	from, with, or by a goose.	Ansér-i-bus,	from, with, or by geese.

5.

N.&V. Mös,	manner.	Mös-ës,	manners.
G. Mös-is(i.e. mot-is),	of manner.	Mös-um,	of manners.
D. Mös-i,	to manner.	Mös-i-bus,	to manners.
A. Mös-em,	manner.	Mös-ës,	manners.
Ab. Mös-ë,	from, with, or by manner.	Mös-i-bus,	from, with, or by manners.

6.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. & V. Matr̄ ,	a mother.	Matr̄-is,	mothers.
G. Matr̄-is,	of a mother.	Matr̄-um,	of mothers.
D. Matr̄-I,	to a mother.	Matr̄-I-bus,	to mothers.
A. Matr̄-em,	a mother.	Matr̄-es,	mothers.
Ab. Matr̄-e,	from, with, or by a mother.	Matr̄-I-bus,	from, with, or by mothers.

Words for Exercise.

Aggr̄, agḡeris, a mound; *carcer̄, carc̄eris*, a prison; *cōlōr, cōlōris*, a colour; *exsil, exs̄ilis*, an exile; *pāter̄, pat̄eris*, a father; *frāter̄, fr̄at̄eris*, a brother; *flōr, fl̄oris* (i.e. *flōsis*), a flower; *mālier̄, mālieris*, a woman; *murm̄ur, murmur̄*; *gutt̄r, the throat.*

NOTE.—The *s* of many words ending in *er* is preserved only in the nominative and vocative singular, but is dropped in all the other cases, as in *mālier̄*.

The ending of the dative and ablative plural is *bus*; but when the stem ends in a consonant, an *i* is inserted as a connecting vowel to facilitate the pronunciation.

§ 24. (2.) Masculine and feminine nouns, in which the nominative is formed by adding *s* to the stem, without any further change except that *cs* and *gs* become *x*.

EXAMPLES.

1.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. & { Rox (stem)		Röḡ-is,	kings.
V. { röḡ,		Röḡ-um,	of kings.
G. Röḡ-is,	of a king.	Röḡ-I-bus,	to kings.
D. Röḡ-I,	to a king.	Röḡ-es,	kings.
A. Röḡ-em,	a king.	Röḡ-I-bus,	from, with, or by kings.
Ab. Röḡ-e,	from, with, or by a king.		

2.

<i>N. & { Dux (stem)</i>		<i>leaders.</i>	
V. { dux,	a leader.	Dūc̄-is,	leaders.
G. Dūc̄-is,	of a leader.	Dūc̄-um,	of leaders.
D. Dūc̄-I,	to a leader.	Dūc̄-I-bus,	to leaders.
A. Dūc̄-em,	a leader.	Dūc̄-es,	leaders.
Ab. Dūc̄-e,	from, with, or by a leader.	Dūc̄-I-bus,	from, with, or by leaders.

3.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
N. & { Rādix (stem)	a root.	Rādic-ēs,
V. { radic),		roots.
G. Rādic-is,	of a root.	Rādic-um,
D. Rādic-i,	to a root.	Rādic-i-bus,
A. Rādic-em,	a root.	Rādic-ēs,
Ab. Rādic-ē,	from, with, or by a root.	Rādic-i-bus,
		from, with, or by roots.

4.

N. & V. Lex (stem leg),	a law.	Lēg-ēs,	laws.
G. Lēg-is,	of a law.	Lēg-um,	of laws.
D. Lēg-i,	to a law.	Lēg-i-bus,	to laws.
A. Lēg-em,	a law.	Lēg-ēs,	laws.
Ab. Lēg-ē,	from, with, or by a law.	Lēg-i-bus,	from, with, or by laws.

5.

N. & { Grex (stem)	a flock.	Grēg-ēs,	flocks.
V. { greg),			
G. Grēg-is,	of a flock.	Grēg-um,	of flocks.
D. Grēg-i,	to a flock.	Grēg-i-bus,	to flocks.
A. Grēg-em,	a flock.	Grēg-ēs,	flocks.
Ab. Grēg-ē,	from, with, or by a flock.	Grēg-i-bus,	from, with, or by flocks.

Words for Exercise.

Nux, nūc-is, a nut; *pax, pāc-is*, peace; *fax, fāc-is*, a torch; *vox, vōc-is*, a voice; *index, indic-is*, an informer; *pollex, pollic-is*, the thumb.

§ 25. (3.) Masculine and feminine nouns, the stem of which ends in *d* or *t*, lose these consonants before the *s* of the nominative.

EXAMPLES.

1.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
N. & { Aetās (stem)	an age.	Aetāt-ēs,
V. { aetat),		ages.
G. Aetāt-is,	of an age.	Aetāt-um,
D. Aetāt-i,	to an age.	Aetāt-i-bus,
A. Aetāt-em,	an age.	Aetāt-ēs,
Ab. Aetāt-ē,	from, with, or by an age.	Aetāt-i-bus,
		from, with, or by ages.

2.

Singular.

N. & { <i>Virtus</i> (stem)			
V. { <i>virtut</i>),	virtue.	<i>Virtut</i> - <i>ēs</i> ,	virtues.
G. <i>Virtut</i> - <i>is</i> ,	of virtue.	<i>Virtut</i> - <i>um</i> ,	of virtues.
D. <i>Virtut</i> - <i>I</i> ,	to virtue.	<i>Virtut</i> - <i>I</i> - <i>bus</i> ,	to virtues.
A. <i>Virtut</i> - <i>em</i> ,	virtue.	<i>Virtut</i> - <i>ēs</i> ,	virtues.
Ab. <i>Virtut</i> - <i>ē</i> ,	from, with, or by virtue.	<i>Virtut</i> - <i>I</i> - <i>bus</i> ,	from, with, or by virtue.

Plural.

3.

N. & { <i>Milit</i> s (stem)			
V. { <i>milit</i>),	a soldier.	<i>Milit</i> - <i>ēs</i> ,	soldiers.
G. <i>Milit</i> - <i>is</i> ,	of a soldier.	<i>Milit</i> - <i>um</i> ,	of soldiers.
D. <i>Milit</i> - <i>I</i> ,	to a soldier.	<i>Milit</i> - <i>I</i> - <i>bus</i> ,	to soldiers.
A. <i>Milit</i> - <i>em</i> ,	a soldier.	<i>Milit</i> - <i>ēs</i> ,	soldiers.
Ab. <i>Milit</i> - <i>ē</i> ,	from, with, or by a soldier.	<i>Milit</i> - <i>I</i> - <i>bus</i> ,	from, with, or by soldiers.

4.

N. & V. <i>Ar</i> s (stem art),	art.	<i>Art</i> - <i>ēs</i> ,	arts.
G. <i>Art</i> - <i>is</i> ,	of art.	<i>Art</i> - <i>I</i> - <i>um</i> ,	of arts.
D. <i>Art</i> - <i>I</i> ,	to art.	<i>Art</i> - <i>I</i> - <i>bus</i> ,	to arts.
A. <i>Art</i> - <i>em</i> ,	art.	<i>Art</i> - <i>ēs</i> ,	arts.
Ab. <i>Art</i> - <i>ē</i> ,	from, with, or by art.	<i>Art</i> - <i>I</i> - <i>bus</i> ,	from, with, or by arts.

5.

N. & { <i>Mons</i> (stem)	mountain.	<i>Mont</i> - <i>ēs</i> ,	mountains.
V. { <i>mont</i>),		<i>Mont</i> - <i>I</i> - <i>um</i> ,	of mountains.
G. <i>Mont</i> - <i>is</i> ,	of a mountain.	<i>Mont</i> - <i>I</i> - <i>bus</i> ,	to mountains.
D. <i>Mont</i> - <i>I</i> ,	to a mountain.	<i>Mont</i> - <i>ēs</i> ,	mountains.
A. <i>Mont</i> - <i>em</i> ,	a mountain.	<i>Mont</i> - <i>I</i> - <i>bus</i> ,	from, with, or by mountains.
Ab. <i>Mont</i> - <i>ē</i> ,	from, with, or by a mountain.		

6.

N. & { <i>Nox</i> (stem noct), a night.		<i>Noct</i> - <i>ēs</i> ,	nights.
V. { <i>noct</i>),		<i>Noct</i> - <i>I</i> - <i>um</i> ,	of nights.
G. <i>Noct</i> - <i>is</i> ,	of a night.	<i>Noct</i> - <i>I</i> - <i>bus</i> ,	to nights.
D. <i>Noct</i> - <i>I</i> ,	to a night.	<i>Noct</i> - <i>ēs</i> ,	nights.
A. <i>Noct</i> - <i>em</i> ,	a night.	<i>Noct</i> - <i>I</i> - <i>bus</i> ,	from, with, or by nights.
Ab. <i>Noct</i> - <i>ē</i> ,	from, with, or by a night.		

Words for Exercise.

Cassis, cassid-*is*, a helmet; *civīl*s, *civīl*-*is*, a state; *cōmīl*s, a companion; *sacerdōt*s, *sacerdōt*-*is*, a priest; *par*s, *part*-*is*, a part; *serpens*, *serpent*-*is*, a serpent; *frons*, *front*-*is*, the forehead; *frons*, *frond*-*is*, foliage; *glans*, *glandis*, acorn.

NOTE.—All monosyllabic words of this class, ending in the nominative singular in two or more consonants, insert an *i* before the *um* of the genitive plural, as is seen in the examples *svs*, *mns*, and *nsz* (for *scs*).

§ 26. (4.) Nouns in which the final consonant of the stem is dropped in the nominative, or the vowel preceding it modified; sometimes both these changes occur in the same word, as in *homo*, of which the stem is *homín*.

EXAMPLES.

1.

	Singular.		Plural.
N. & { Orátio (stem)	a speech.	Orátion- <i>äs</i> ,	speeches.
V. { oration),			
G. Orátion- <i>is</i> ,	of a speech.	Orátion- <i>um</i> ,	of speeches.
D. Orátion- <i>I</i> ,	to a speech.	Orátion- <i>I-bus</i> ,	to speeches.
A. Orátion- <i>em</i> ,	a speech.	Orátion- <i>äs</i> ,	speeches.
Ab. Orátion- <i>ä</i> ,	from, with, or by a speech.	Orátion- <i>I-bus</i> ,	from, with, or by speeches.

2.

N., A., { Nömin (stem)	a name.	Nömin- <i>ä</i> ,	names.
& V. { nomin),			
G. Nömin- <i>is</i> ,	of a name.	Nömin- <i>um</i> ,	of names.
D. Nömin- <i>I</i> ,	to a name.	Nömin- <i>I-bus</i> ,	to names.
Ab. Nömin- <i>ä</i> ,	from, with, or by a name.	Nömin- <i>I-bus</i> ,	from, with, or by names.

3.

N., A., { Cápít (stem)	a head.	Cápít- <i>ä</i> ,	heads.
& V. { capit),			
G. Cápít- <i>is</i> ,	of a head.	Cápít- <i>um</i> ,	of heads.
D. Cápít- <i>I</i> ,	to a head.	Cápít- <i>I-bus</i> ,	to heads.
Ab. Cápít- <i>ä</i> ,	from, with, or by a head.	Cápít- <i>I-bus</i> ,	from, with, or by heads.

4.

N. & { Hömo (stem)	a man.	Hömin- <i>äs</i> ,	mén.
V. { homin),			
G. Hömin- <i>is</i> ,	of a man.	Hömin- <i>um</i> ,	of men.
D. Hömin- <i>I</i> ,	to a man.	Hömin- <i>I-bus</i> ,	to men.
A. Hömin- <i>em</i> ,	a man.	Hömin- <i>äs</i> ,	men.
Ab. Hömin- <i>ä</i> ,	from, with, or by a man.	Hömin- <i>I-bus</i> ,	from, with, or by men.

Words for Exercise.

Nemo, nēmōn-is, no man; *fūmen, fūmōn-is*, a river; *carmēn, carmīn-is*, a poem; *fulmēn, fulmīn-is*, a flash of lightning; *lac, lact-is*, milk.

This class also includes the neuter nouns in *us* and *os*, whose stems end in *es* or *os*; but in the oblique cases the *s* is changed into *r*. Hence the genitive *gēnēr-is* stands for *genes-is*, *corpōr-is* for *corpos-is*, and *crūr-is* for *crus-is*. Comp. *mos* in § 23.

EXAMPLES.

1.

Singular.

N., A., { <i>Gēnūs</i> (stem)	a kind.	<i>Gēnēr-ā,</i>	kinds.
& V. { <i>genes</i> ,			
G. <i>Gēnēr-ia,</i>	of a kind.	<i>Gēnēr-um,</i>	of kinds.
D. <i>Gēnēr-i,</i>	to a kind.	<i>Gēnēr-i-bus,</i>	to kinds.
Ab. <i>Gēnēr-ā,</i>	from, with, or by a kind.	<i>Gēnēr-i-bus,</i>	from, with, or by kinds.

2.

N., A., { <i>Temp̄tūs</i> (stem)	time.	<i>Temp̄oř-ā,</i>	times.
& V. { <i>temp̄os</i> ,			
G. <i>Temp̄oř-ia,</i>	of time.	<i>Temp̄oř-um,</i>	of times.
D. <i>Temp̄oř-i,</i>	to time.	<i>Temp̄oř-i-bus,</i>	to times.
Ab. <i>Temp̄oř-ā,</i>	from, with, or by time.	<i>Temp̄oř-i-bus,</i>	from, with, or by times.

Words for Exercise.

Fūnūs, fūnēr-is, a funeral; *lātūs, lātēr-is*, a side; *sidūs, sidēr-is*, a constellation; *vulnūs, vulnēr-is*, a wound; *littūs, littēr-is*, a shore; *corpūs, corpōr-is*, a body; *pectūs, pectōr-is*, a breast. So also, *ōs, ör-is*, the mouth; and *crūs, crūr-is*, a leg.

§ 27. (5.) Nouns of which the stem ends in *i*. Masculine and feminine nouns add an *s* to the stem to form the nominative; sometimes the *i* of the stem becomes *e* in the nominative.

EXAMPLES.*Singular.*

N. & { <i>Hostis</i> (stem)	an enemy.	<i>Host-ās,</i>	enemies.
V. { <i>hosti</i>),			
G. <i>Host-ia,</i>	of an enemy.	<i>Hosti-um,</i>	of enemies.
D. <i>Host-i,</i>	to an enemy.	<i>Hosti-bus,</i>	to enemies.
A. <i>Host-em,</i>	an enemy.	<i>Host-ās,</i>	enemies.
Ab. <i>Host-ā,</i>	from, with, or by an enemy.	<i>Hosti-bus,</i>	from, with, or by enemies.

2.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
N. & { Rüpës (stem)	a rock.	Rüpës,	rocks.
V. { rüpi),			
G. Rüp-is,	of a rock.	Rüpi-um,	of rocks.
D. Rüp-l,	to a rock.	Rüpl-bus,	to rocks.
A. Rüp-em,	a rock.	Rüp-es,	rocks.
Ab. Rüp-ä,	from, with, or by a rock.	Rüpl-bus,	from, with, or by rocks.

Words for Exercise.

Civis, a citizen; *classis*, a fleet; *vestis*, a garment; *avis*, a bird; *ovis*, a sheep; *felis*, a cat; *nubes*, a cloud; *clades*, a defeat; *sedes*, a seat.

To this class also belong the neuter nouns in *e=i*, *al=ale*, or *ali*, and *ar=are*, or *ari*.

EXAMPLES.

1.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
N., A., { Märi (stem)	the sea.	Märi-ä,	the seas.
& V. { mari),			
G. Märi-is,	of the sea.	Märi-um,	of the seas.
D. Märi-l,	to the sea.	Märi-bus,	to the seas.
Ab. Märi-ä,	from, with, or by the sea.	Märi-bus,	from, with, or by the seas.

2.

N., A., { Animäl (stem)			
& V. { animali),	an animal.	Animäli-ä,	animals.
G. Animäl-is,	of an animal.	Animäli-um,	of animals.
D. Animäl-l,	to an animal.	Animäli-bus,	to animals.
Ab. Animäl-ä,	from, with, or by an animal.	Animäli-bus,	from, with, or by animals.

3.

N., A., { Calcär (stem)			
& V. { calcari),	a spur.	Calcäri-ä,	spurs.
G. Calcäri-is,	of a spur.	Calcäri-um,	of spurs.
D. Calcäri-l,	to a spur.	Calcäri-bus,	to spurs.
Ab. Calcäri-ä,	from, with, or by a spur.	Calcäri-bus,	from, with, or by spurs.

Words for Exercise.

Mönile, a necklace; *övile*, a sheepfold; *rête*, a net; *vectigal*, a tax; *exemplar*, an example.

CHAPTER VIII.

REMARKS ON SOME CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 28. The real ending of the Accusative Singular in this as in all other declensions is *m*. In words, the stem of which ends in *i*, the accusative might be formed in *im* instead of *em*. But the latter is usually preferred, and only the following make the accusative regularly in *im*: *dmussis*, a rule; *rāvis*, hoarseness; *stis*, thirst; *tussis*, a cough; *vis*, force; and the following names of towns and rivers: *Hispalis*, *Tiberis*, *Albis*, and *Baetis*.

The following fluctuate between *em* and *im*: *febris*, fever; *pelvis*, a basin; *puppis*, the stern of a ship; *restis*, a rope; *turris*, a tower; *secūris*, an axe; *clāvis*, a key; *messis*, the harvest; and *nāvis*, a ship.

§ 29. The following nouns, the stems of which end in *i*, form the Ablative in *ī*:

1. Those which make the accusative in *im*.
2. The neuter nouns in *e*, *ai*, and *ar*.

NOTE.—Masculine and feminine nouns in *ai* and *ar*, as *sal*, salt; *nectar*, nectar; *jūbar*, a sunbeam; *far* (genitive *farris*), spelt, make their ablative in *ī*.

3. All adjectives in *is*, *is*, *e*, and *er*, *is*, *e*.

Some nouns fluctuate in the ablative between *ī* and *ē*. Such is the case—

1. With those which in the accusative fluctuate between *im* and *em*: as *puppis*, ablative *puppi* or *puppe*; also with *ignis*, fire; *avis*, a bird; *imber*, a shower; *tesper*, evening. But *restis* has only *restī*, and *secūris* only *secūri*.

2. With adjectives of one termination for all the three genders, and with all comparatives: as *audaz*, ablative *audace* or *audaci*; *sapiens*, ablative *sapientī* or *sapienti*; *felix*, ablative *felicē* or *felicitē*; *amplior*, ablative *ampliorī* or *ampliorē*. But some adjectives of this class have *ē* exclusively: as *pauper*, poor; *pubes*, an adult; *compos*, master of; *impos*, not master of; *princeps*, chief; and one or two others.

NOTE.—The adjectives *m̄mor*, mindful, and *p̄r̄*, equal, always make the ablative in *ī*; but the substantive *p̄r̄*, a pair or couple, has either *p̄r̄ē* or *p̄r̄i*.

3. With participles in *ns* (genitive *n̄is*); but in the construction called the ablative absolute, they always have *ɛ*, as *Romulo regnante*, in the reign of Romulus.

§ 30. The Neuter Nominative Plural in *ia* occurs—

1. In all neuter nouns with a stem ending in *i*, as those ending in the nominative in *e*, *al*, or *ar*; e.g., *mare*, *animal*, *calcar*: nominative plural *maria*, *animalia*, *calcaria*.

2. In all adjectives which have their ablative singular either always in *i*, or both in *ɛ* and *t̄*: as *gravis*, *gravid*; *prudens*, *prudentiā*; *audax*, *audaciā*. Comparatives, however, have always simply *ɛ*: as *amplius*, *amplior*; *melius*, *melior*.

§ 31. The Genitive Plural ends in *um*—

1. In all nouns with a stem ending in *i*: as *navis*, *navium*; *hostis*, *hostium*; *aedes*, *aedium*; *animal*, *animalium*.

NOTE.—The following are exceptions, forming their genitive plural in *um*: *jūvenis*, a youth; *ēdēs*, a prophet; *cōnis*, a dog; *ēpis*, a bee; *sēdes*, a seat; *vulcīris*, a bldn.

2. In the words *imber*, a shower; *uter*, a leather bag; *linier*, a wherry; *venter*, the belly; and *cōrō*, flesh; genitive plural: *imbrium*, *utrium*, *lintrium*, *ventrīum*, *carnīum*.

3. In monosyllabic words with a stem ending in two consonants: as *urbe* (stem *urb*), genitive *urbīum*; *dēns* (stem *dent*), genitive *dēntīum* (comp. § 25, note). Also in the following monosyllabic words: *mīs*, a mouse; *mīs*, a male; *nīx*, snow; *strīx*, an owl; and *fauz*, the throat.

4. In national names in *is* and *as*: as *Quīris*, genitive *Quirītīum*; *Fidēnas*, *Fidēnatīum*; *Arpīnas*, *Arpīnatīum*.

5. Polysyllabic words in *ns* may make the genitive plural either in *um* or *īum*, as *adolescēns* (a young man), genitive either *adolescentīum* or *adolescentīum*.

§ 32. Greek nouns of the third declension are mostly proper names retaining in the nominative the same form as in Greek; in the other cases also they follow the Greek rather than the Latin declension.

CHAPTER IX.

THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION.

§ 33. The fourth declension comprises all nouns the stem of which ends in *u*; it is in reality only a con-

tracted form of the third declension. The nominative of masculine and feminine nouns ends in *us*, and of neuters in *u*.

EXAMPLES.

1.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. & V. <i>Sens-us</i> ,	a sense.	<i>Sensi-s</i> ,	senses.
G. <i>Sens-u</i> ,	of a sense.	<i>Sensi-um</i> ,	of senses.
D. <i>Sensi-l</i> ,	to a sense.	<i>Sensi-bus</i> ,	to senses.
A. <i>Sensi-m</i> ,	a sense.	<i>Sensi-s</i> ,	senses.
Ab. <i>Sensi</i> ,	from, with, or by a sense.	<i>Sensi-bus</i> ,	from, with, or by senses.

2.

N. & V. <i>Artu-s</i> ,	a joint.	<i>Artu-s</i> ,	joints.
G. <i>Artu-s</i> ,	of a joint.	<i>Artu-um</i> ,	of joints.
D. <i>Artu-l</i> ,	to a joint.	<i>Artu-bus</i> ,	to joints.
A. <i>Artu-m</i> ,	a joint.	<i>Artu-s</i> ,	joints.
Ab. <i>Artu</i> ,	from, with, or by a joint.	<i>Artu-bus</i> ,	from, with, or by joints.

3.

N., A., & V. <i>Cornu</i> ,	a horn.	<i>Cornu-ä</i> ,	horns.
G. <i>Cornu-s</i> ,	of a horn.	<i>Cornu-um</i> ,	of horns.
D. <i>Cornu</i> (<i>cornu-l</i>), to a horn.	<i>Cornu-bus</i> ,	to horns.	
Ab. <i>Cornu</i> ,	from, with, or by a horn.	<i>Cornu-bus</i> ,	from, with, or by horns.

Words for Exercise.

Grădus, a step; *fructus*, fruit; *mōtus*, a movement; *īeus*, use; *cāeus*, a fall; *passus*, a pace; *ācus*, a needle; *lăcus*, a lake; *vĕru*, a spit; *yĕnu*, a knee.

All nouns in *u* are neuter, and those ending in *us* are masculine, unless they are names of females or of trees (see § 12). Besides these the following also are feminine: *mānus*, a hand; *tribus*, a tribe; *ācus*, a needle; *dōmus*, a house; *porticus*, a porch.

NOTE 1.—In the dative and ablative plural the *u* of the stem is generally changed into *i*, but the following nouns retain the *u*: *quer-cus*, an oak; *ācus*, a needle; *arcus*, a bow; *lăcus*, a lake; *tribus*, a tribe; *portus*, a harbour; *partus*, a birth; *spōsus*, cave; *vĕru*, a spit; and *păcu*, cattle; though *portus* and *vĕru* sometimes change the *u* into *i*.

NOTE 2.—The word *dōmus* is declined partly according to the second, and partly according to the fourth declension, as follows:—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. & V. Dōmū-s,	a house.	Dōmū-s,	houses.
G. Dōmū-s,	of a house.	Dōmū-um or } Dōmū-rum, }	of houses.
D. Dōmū-i,	to a house.	Dōmū-bus,	to houses.
A. Dōmū-m,	a house.	Dōmū-s or dōmūs,	houses.
Ab. Dōmō,	from a house, or from home.	Dōmīl-bus,	from, with, or by houses.

NOTE.—The form *domi* (at home) is not a genitive but a locative.

CHAPTER X.

THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

§ 34. All nouns of the fifth declension have a stem ending in *e*, from which the nominative is formed by the usual addition of *s*. The genitive is formed by adding *i* to the stem.

EXAMPLES.

1.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. & V. Diē-s,	a day.	Diē-s,	days.
G. Diē-i,	of a day.	Diē-rum,	of days.
D. Diē-i,	to a day.	Diē-bus,	to days.
A. Diē-m,	a day.	Diē-s,	days.
Ab. Diē,	from, with, or by a day.	Diē-bus,	from, with, or by days.

2.

N. & V. Rē-s,	a thing.	Rē-s,	things.
G. Rē-i,	of a thing.	Rē-rum,	of things.
D. Rē-i,	to a thing.	Rē-bus,	to things.
A. Rē-m,	a thing.	Rē-s,	things.
Ab. Rē,	from, with, or by a thing.	Rē-bus,	from, with, or by things.

Words for Exercise.

Acies, a point; *effigies*, a likeness; *fācies*, a face; *fides*, faith; *spēcies*, an appearance; *plēbes*, the commonalty; *spēs*, a hope; *sēries*, a series; *mēridēs*, mid-day.

NOTE 1.—All words of this declension are feminine, except *dies*, which, in the singular, is used both as a masculine and as a feminine; but in the plural is masculine only. *Mēridies* is masculine only.

NOTE 2.—There are only a few nouns belonging to this declension, and *rea* and *dies* are the only ones that have both the singular and the plural complete.

CHAPTER XI.

PECULIARITIES AND IRREGULARITIES IN THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 35. 1. Some spurious compound substantives decline both nouns of which they are composed: as *respublica* (a state), genitive *reipublicae*, accusative *republicam*, etc.; *jūgjurandum* (an oath), genitive *jūgjurandi*.

2. Some substantives are indeclinable: as *fīs*, a thing in accordance with divine law; *nēfās*, contrary to divine law; *instar*, resemblance; *pondō*, a pound; the names of the letters of the alphabet, as *alpha*, *beta*, *gamma*; and any words which, without being substantives, are used as such. Verbs, however, when used as substantives, have a complete declension in the singular: as nominative *scribēre*, writing; genitive *scribendi*, of writing; dative *scribendo*, to writing; accusative *scribere* or *scribendum*, writing; ablative *scribendo*, with or by writing.

3. Some substantives are used only in the plural: as *arma*, arms; *libēri*, children; *ſtriae*, a holiday; *tenebrae*, darkness; *nuptiae*, marriage; *manubiae*, booty; *moenia*, the walls of a city; *divitiae*, wealth, and many others.

4. The following substantives have one meaning in the singular and another in the plural:—

Singular.

Aedēs, a temple.

Auxiliū, help.

Carōrē, a prison.

Caſtrum, a fort.

Comitium, the place of meeting.

Cōpia, plenty.

Fīnis, the end.

Fortūna, fortune.

Impedimentū, a hindrance.

Littōra, a letter of the alphabet.

Op̄ra, work.

Op̄is (genitive of *ope*), help.

Roſtrum, a beak.

Saltū, salt.

Plural.

Aedēs, temple, or a house.

Auxiliū, auxiliary troops.

Carōrēs, prisons, or barriers in a racecourse.

Caſtra, a camp.

Comitia, the meeting, or assembly.

Cōpias, military forces.

Fīnes, the boundaries, territory.

Fortūnas, gifts of fortune.

Impedimenta, baggage.

Littōras, an epistle, a letter.

Op̄ras, workmen.

Op̄es, wealth.

Roſtra, the platform in the Forum.

Saltūs, wit or witty words.

5. Some substantives are used only in the oblique cases, the nominative being wanting: as genitive *dapis* (from *dape*), of food; *dītōnis* (from *dītō*), of dominion; *frūgis* (from *frūx*), of fruit; *internēcōnis* (from *internēcio*), of destruction; *opis* (from *ops*), help. *Fors*, chance, occurs only in the nominative and ablative singular. Of the obsolete *prez*, prayer, we have only the dative, accusative, and ablative singular, *prēci*, *prēcem*, and *prēce*; the plural is complete. Of *vīcis*, change, we have in the singular only the genitive *vīcis*, the accusative *vīcem*, and the ablative *vīce*; its plural is complete, but wants the genitive. *Vīs*, force, has in the singular, besides the nominative, only the accusative *vīm*, and the ablative *vī*; but the plural is complete, *vīres*, *vīrīm*, *vīribus*. The following three words exist in the singular only in the ablative, but their plural is complete: *ambāgē* (circuit), *faučē*, (throat), and *verbērē* (a blow). *Sponz*, by inclination, occurs only in this ablative form. So also *jussū*, by order; *natū*, by birth. Other defective nouns of this kind must be learned by practice and observation.

6. Some substantives have two or more forms in the nominative, and accordingly belong to different declensions. They are called Heteroclitia: as *menda* and *mendum* (a fault); *vesper* (evening) makes the accusative *vesperum*, according to the second declension, while the ablative is commonly *vespērē* or *vespēri* (in the evening), according to the third; *dōmus* (see § 33, note 2); *ēventus* and *eventum*, an occurrence; *suggestus* and *suggestum*, a platform for speakers; *laurus* and *laurum*, a bay tree; *cūpressus* and *cūpressum*, a cypress; *plēbe* and *plēbēs*, the commonalty, genitive *plēbīs* or *plēbētē*; *rēquīsīs*, rest, genitive *rēquīsītē* and *rēquīsītē*. The word *vās* (a vessel), genitive *vāsis*, belongs to the third declension in the singular; but the plural, *vāsa*, *vāsōrum*, *vāsis*, belongs to the second. *Jūgērum* (an acre), on the other hand, belongs to the second in the singular; but the plural *jūgēra*, *jūgērum*, *jūgērbūs*, to the third.

§ 36. Some substantives have different genders in the plural. The principal words of this kind are—

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Jōcūs</i> , (masculine), a joke.	<i>Jōci</i> and <i>jōca</i> .
<i>Lōcūs</i> (masculine), a place.	<i>Lōci</i> and <i>lōca</i> .
<i>Carbāsus</i> (feminine), linen.	<i>Carbāsa</i> , sails.
<i>Caelūm</i> , heaven.	<i>Caelī</i> , heavens.
<i>Frēnum</i> , a bit.	<i>Frēni</i> and <i>frēna</i> .
<i>Rastrum</i> , a hatchet.	<i>Rastri</i> and <i>rastra</i> .
<i>Ostrea</i> , oyster.	<i>Ostreæ</i> and <i>ostred̄</i> .
<i>Sibīs</i> , hissing.	<i>Sibīlē</i> and <i>sibīla</i> .
<i>Tartārus</i> , the lower regions.	<i>Tartāra</i> .

§ 37. The following words are irregular in the formation

of the genitive singular; but the other cases are formed regularly from it:—

Bos, ox; genitive *bōvis*, *bōvi*, etc., dative and ablative plural *bōbus* or *bubus*.

Cārō, flesh; genitive *carnis*, dative *carnī*, etc.

Far, spelt; genitive *farris*.

Iter, a journey; genitive *itineris*, dative *itinerī*, etc.

Jēcur, liver; genitive *jecoris*, *jecinōris*, or *jocinōris*, etc.

Jupiter or *Juppiter*, genitive *Jōvis*, dative *Jōvī*, accusative *Jōvem*, ablative *Jōvē*.

Nix, snow; genitive *nīvis*, dative *nīvī*, accusative *nīvem*, etc.

Os, a bone; genitive *ossis*, genitive plural *ossum*.

Sēnēx, old man; genitive *sēnis*, dative *sēni*, accusative *sēnem*, etc.

Supellex, furniture; genitive *supellectilis*, dative *supellectili*, etc.

CHAPTER XII.

ADJECTIVES AND THEIR DECLENSIONS.

§ 38. All adjectives are declined according to one of the first three declensions, and no adjective follows the fourth or fifth.

All adjectives are divided into four classes:—

1. Adjectives in *us* and *er* have three distinct terminations—*us* or *er* for the masculine, *a* for the feminine, and *um* for the neuter. The masculine and neuter follow the second declension, and the feminine the first: as *bōnus* (good), feminine *bōna*, neuter *bōnum*; *mīser* (wretched), feminine *mīséra*, neuter *mīserūm*; *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum* (beautiful).

NOTE.—Adjectives in *er*, *a*, *um*, generally throw out the *e* before the *r* in the feminine and neuter, and in all the oblique cases, as *sācer* (sacred), feminine *sacra*, neuter *sacrum*. A few only retain the *e*, as *asper* (rough), *aspēra*, *asperum*; *lācēr* (torn), *lācēra*, *lācērum*; *liber* (free), *libēra*, *libērum*; *mīser* (wretched), *mīséra*, *mīserūm*.

2. The second class contains a limited number of adjectives ending in the masculine in *er*, in the feminine in *i*, and in the neuter in *e*, as *ācer* (sharp), feminine *acris*, neuter *acre*. All follow the third declension, and their stem ends in *i*, whence the genitive plural ends in *ium*.

The names of the months ending in *er*, as *October*, *November*, etc., are properly adjectives of this class.

3. The third class comprises all adjectives in *i*, and the com-

paratives in *ior*. They have only two terminations—*is* and *ior* for both the masculine and feminine, and *e* and *ius* for the neuter, as: masculine and feminine *tristis* (sad), neuter *triste*; masculine and feminine *maior* (greater), neuter *maius*. All adjectives of this class belong to the third declension, and the stem of those in *is* ends in *i*, while that of the comparatives ends in the consonant *r*.

4. All other adjectives have only one termination for all the three genders, as: *säpiens*, wise; *audax*, bold; *concors*, unanimous; *mēmor*, mindful; *lōcuples*, rich. All belong to the third declension, and their stems end in *i*.

EXAMPLES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST CLASS.

	<i>Singular.</i>		1.		<i>Plural.</i>	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Bönu-s,	böna,	bönu-m.	Bönl,	bönae,	böna.
G.	Bönl,	bönae,	bönl.	Böñö-rum,	bönä-rum,	bönö-rum.
D.	Böñö,	bönae,	böñö.	Bön-is,	bön-is,	bön-is.
A.	Bönu-m,	böna-m,	bönu-m.	Böñö-s,	bönä-s,	bönä.
V.	Bönä,	böna,	bönu-m.	Bönl,	bönae,	bönä.
Ab.	Bönö,	böna,	böñö.	Bön-is,	bön-is,	bön-is.
	2.					
N.	{ Säcer,	sacra,	sacrum.	Sacrī,	sacrae,	sacrā.
V.		sacrae,	sacrī.	Sacrō-rum,	sacrā-rum,	sacrō-rum.
G.	Sacrī,	sacrae,	sacrī.	Sacrō-is,	sacrā-is,	sacrī-is.
D.	Sacrō,	sacrae,	sacrō.	Sacrō-s,	sacrā-s,	sacrā.
A.	Sacru-m,	sacra-m,	sacru-m.	Sacrō-s,	sacrā-s,	sacrā.
Ab.	Sacrō,	sacrā,	sacrō.	Sacrō-is,	sacrā-is,	sacrī-is.
	3.					
N.	{ Misér,	miséra,	miséru-m.	Misérī,	misérae,	misérā.
V.		misérae,	misérī.	Misérō-	misérā-	misérō-
G.	Misérī,	misérae,	misérī.	rum,	rum,	rum.
D.	Misérō,	misérae,	misérō.	Misérīs,	misérīs,	misérīs.
A.	Miséru-m,	miséra-m,	miséru-m.	Misérō-s,	misérā-s,	misérā.
Ab.	Misérō,	misérā,	misérō.	Misérīs,	misérīs,	misérīs.

EXAMPLES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.	{ Acer,	äcrīs,	äcrē.	Acrēs,	äcri-ä.
V.		acris,	acris.	Acri-um,	acri-um.
G.	Acrīs,	acris,	acris.	Acri-bus,	acri-bus.
D.	Acri,	acri,	acri.	Acrēs,	acri-a.
A.	Acre-m,	acre-m,	acrē.	Acri-bus,	acri-bus.
Ab.	Acri,	acri,	acri.		C

EXAMPLES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD CLASS.

Singular.		Plural.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. } Fortis,	fortē.	Fortēs,	forti-ā.
V. } fortē.		Forti-um,	forti-um.
G. Fortis,	fortis.	Porti-bus,	forti-bus.
D. Forti,	forti.	Portēs,	forti-ā.
A. Forte-m,	fortē.	Porti-bus,	forti-bus.
Ab. Forti,	forti.		
		2.	
N. } Altior,	altius,	Altior-ēs.	altior a.
V. } altius,		Altior-um,	altior-um.
G. Altior-is,	altior-is.	Altioribus,	altioribus.
D. Altior-i,	altior-i.	Altior-ēs,	altior-ā.
A. Altior-em,	altius.	Altioribus,	altioribus.
Ab. Altior-ē,	altior-ē.		

EXAMPLES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE FOURTH CLASS.

Singular.		Plural.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. } Säpiens.	säpiens.	Säpient-ēs,	säpienti-ā.
V. } säpiens.		Säpient-um,	säpienti-um.
G. Säpient-is,	säpient-is.	Säpientibus,	säpienti-bus.
D. Säpient-i,	säpient-i.	Säpient-ēs,	säpienti-ā.
A. Säpient-em,	säpiens.	Säpientibus,	säpienti-bus.
Ab. Säpient-ē,	säpient-ē.		
N. } Audax,	audax.	2. Audāc-ēs,	audāci-ā.
V. } audax.		Audāc-um,	audāci-um.
G. Audāc-is,	audāc-is.	Audācibus,	audāci-bus.
D. Audāc-i,	audāc-i.	Audāc-ēs,	audāci-ā.
A. Audāc-em,	audax.	Audācibus,	audāci-bus.
Ab. Audāc-ē,	audāc-ē.		

NOTE.—Some adjectives are indeclinable, as:

Frūgi (honest).

Nequam (worthless).

Opus and *nēcessē* (necessary).

CHAPTER XIII.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 39. Adjectives in Latin, as in English, have three degrees of comparison—viz., the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative, as :

Altus, high; *altior*, higher; *altissimus*, highest.

The comparative ends in *ior* and the superlative in *issimus*. These terminations are added to the stem of an adjective after the removal of its final vowel, as :

Superbus, proud (stem *superbo*); comparative *superb-i-or*, superlative *superb-issimus*.

Tristis, sad (stem *tristi*); comparative *trist-i-or*, superlative *trist-issimus*.

Sapiens, wise (stem *sapienti*); comparative *sapient-i-or*, superlative *sapient-issimus*.

Audax, bold (stem *audaci*); comparative *audac-i-or*, superlative *audac-issimus*.

§ 40. All comparatives are adjectives of two terminations, masculine and feminine *ior*, neuter *ius*; both make the genitive in *oris*, and are declined like adjectives of the third class (see § 38, 3).

All superlatives are adjectives of three terminations *us*, *a*, *um*, and belong to the adjectives of the first class (see § 38, 1).

§ 41. Adjectives ending in *er* drop the *e* in forming the comparative when they drop it in the oblique cases; but they form the superlative by adding *rimus* to the nominative singular, as :

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Acer</i> , sharp,	<i>acr-i-or</i> ,	<i>acer-ri-mus.</i>
<i>Liber</i> , free,	<i>liber-i-or</i> ,	<i>liber-ri-mus.</i>
<i>Pulcher</i> , beautiful,	<i>pulchr-i-or</i> ,	<i>pulcher-ri-mus.</i>
<i>Miser</i> , wretched,	<i>miser-i-or</i> ,	<i>miser-ri-mus.</i>

NOTE.—To this class also belongs the adjective *vetus* (old), with its superlative *vettorimus*.

§ 42. The following six adjectives in *llis* form the comparative regularly, but the superlative by changing the final *i* into *imus*:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Facilis</i> (easy),	<i>fácil-i-or</i> ,	<i>fácil-ri-mus.</i>
<i>Dificilis</i> (difficult),	<i>difícil-i-or</i> ,	<i>difícil-ri-mus.</i>
<i>Similis</i> (like),	<i>simil-i-or</i> ,	<i>simil-ri-mus.</i>
<i>Dissimilis</i> (unlike),	<i>dissimil-i-or</i> ,	<i>dissimil-ri-mus.</i>
<i>Gracilis</i> (thin),	<i>gracil-i-or</i> ,	<i>gracil-ri-mus.</i>
<i>Humilis</i> (low),	<i>humil-i-or</i> ,	<i>humil-ri-mus.</i>

§ 43. Adjectives ending in *dicus*, *ficus*, and *volus* form their comparative in *entior* and the superlative in *entestimus*, as if their positive ended in *dicens*, *ficens*, and *volens*: as:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Mâlédicuſ</i> (e slanderous),	<i>mâlédic-en-tior</i> ,	<i>mâlédic-en-tissi-mus</i> .
<i>Bénificuſ</i> (beneficent),	<i>bénific-en-tior</i> ,	<i>bénific-en-tissi-mus</i> .
<i>Benevoluſ</i> (benevolent),	<i>benevol-en-tior</i> ,	<i>benevol-en-tissi-mus</i> .

§ 44. Adjectives in which the ending *us* is preceded by a vowel, generally do not form the degrees of comparison, but express them by a paraphrase with *magis* (more) and *maxime* (most), as is done in many cases in English: as *anxiuſ* (anxious), comparative *magis anxiuſ*, superlative *maxime anxiuſ*.

NOTE.—As *qu* was pronounced like *k*, the *u* is not regarded as a vowel; hence *antiquuſ* (ancient), comparative *antiquior*, superlative *antiquissimus*.

IRREGULAR DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

§ 45. The following adjectives form the degrees of comparison in an irregular manner:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Bonus</i> (good),	<i>meliōr</i> (better),	<i>optimuſ</i> (best).
<i>Mâliuſ</i> (bad),	<i>pēior</i> (worse),	<i>pessimuſ</i> (worst).
<i>Magnuſ</i> (great),	<i>mäior</i> (greater),	<i>maximuſ</i> (greatest).
<i>Multuſ</i> (much),	<i>plus</i> (more, neuter only); genitive <i>plūris</i> ; plural, <i>plūres</i> and <i>plūra</i> ,	<i>plūrimuſ</i> .
<i>Parvuſ</i> (small),	<i>minor</i> (smaller),	<i>mīnimuſ</i> (smallest).
<i>Negruſ</i> , indecl. (worthless),	<i>nēquior</i> ,	<i>nequissimuſ</i> .
<i>Frugā</i> , indecl. (frugal),	<i>frugālior</i> ,	<i>frugāliſſimuſ</i> .
<i>Vetuſ</i> (old),		<i>veterimuſ</i> .

NOTE 1.—*Senex* (an old man), and *juvēniſ* (a youth), though substantives, have a comparative *sēnior* (older) and *jūnior* (younger). Their superlatives are expressed by *natu maximuſ* (the oldest) and *natu mīnimuſ* (the youngest). *Deterior* (worse), *ocior* (swifter), have no positive, and their superlatives are *deterrimuſ*, *ocissimuſ*. *Novuſ* (now) again has no comparative, but the superlative *novissimuſ* is very common. *Dives* has *ditiōr* and *ditiſſimuſ*, as well as *divitior*.

NOTE 2.—Some comparatives and superlatives are derived from adverbs, as:

	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Citrā</i> (on this side),	<i>citrōr</i> (more on this side),	<i>citrīmuſ</i> (most on this side).
<i>Extrā</i> (outside)	<i>extērōr</i> (outer),	<i>extrēmuſ</i> or <i>extimus</i> (outermost).
<i>Infrā</i> (below),	<i>infērōr</i> (lower).	<i>infīmuſ</i> or <i>īmuſ</i> (lowest).
	The positive, <i>extērōr</i> , signifies "foreigners."	
<i>Ultrā</i> (beyond),	<i>ultiōr</i> (farther),	<i>ultimuſ</i> (farthest, last).
		<i>infīmuſ</i> or <i>īmuſ</i> (lowest).

The positive plural *infēri* signifies the inhabitants of the lower world; in the singular it occurs only in the name *Mare Inferum*, the sea on the west of Italy.

	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Intrā</i> (within),	<i>intōrior</i> (inner),	<i>int̄imus</i> (innermost).
<i>Prōpē</i> (near),	<i>prōp̄ior</i> (nearer),	<i>prōximus</i> (nearest).
<i>Post</i> (after),	<i>postērior</i> (later),	<i>postrēmus</i> (last).

There is a positive *postērus* signifying "the following," and the plural *postēri* signifies "descendants."

<i>Prae</i> or <i>pro</i> (before),	<i>prior</i> (former),	<i>primus</i> (first).
<i>Suprā</i> (above),	<i>sūpērior</i> (upper),	<i>suprēmus</i> or <i>summus</i> (uppermost).

The positive plural, *sūpēri*, signifies the gods above; but the singular occurs only in the name *Mare Superum*, the Adriatic.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE NUMERALS.

§ 46. Most numerals are in reality declinable or indeclinable adjectives. They are divided into six classes:—

1. **Cardinal Numerals**, simply mentioning the number of objects: as *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two; *tres*, three, etc.
2. **Ordinal Numerals**, indicating the order or succession of objects: as *primus*, the first; *secundus*, the second; *tertius*, the third, etc.
3. **Distributive Numerals**, denoting how many each time: as *singūli*, one at a time; *bīti*, two and two, or two each time; *terni*, three each time, etc.
4. **Adverbial Numerals**, denoting the number of times that anything happens or is done: as *sem̄el*, once; *bis*, twice; *tēr*, three times, etc.
5. **Multiplicative Numerals**, denoting how manifold a thing is: as *duplex*, twofold; *triplex*, threefold.
6. **Proportional Numerals**, denoting how many times more one thing is than another: as *triplus*, three times as much.

The following table exhibits the chief numerals of the first four classes.

NUMERALS.

ARABIC NUMERALS.	ROMAN NUMERALS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTINCTIONES.	ADVENS.
1	I	unitus, s, um duo, se, o tres, tria quattuor, quatuor quinque sex septem octo nove decem undecim duodecim tredecim quattuordecim quindicim sedecim septendecim duodeviginti viginti unus et viginti or viginti unus	primitus secundus tertius quartus quintus sextus septimus octavus nonus decimus undecimus duodecimus tredecimus quattuordecimus quindicimus sedecimus septendecimus duodeviginti viginti unus et viginti or viginti unus	singuli bini terni or trini quadrupli quintupli sexagesim septuagesim octagesim novagesim deciagesim undeciagesim duodeciagesim tredeciagesim quattuorciagesim quindiciagesim sestagesim septagesim duodevigintagesim vigintagesim unus et vicinatus or primus et vicinus	atmet. bis. tert. quattuor. quinq <i>ue</i> . sexagesim. septuagesim. octagesim. novagesim. deciagesim. undeciagesim. duodeciagesim. tredeciagesim. quattuorciagesim. quindiciagesim. sestagesim. septagesim. duodevigintagesim. vigintagesim. atmet et vicinus.
2	II				
3	III				
4	IV				
5	V				
6	VI				
7	VII				
8	VIII				
9	IX				
10	X				
11	XI				
12	XII				
13	XIII				
14	XIV				
15	XV				
16	XVI				
17	XVII				
18	XVIII				
19	XIX				
20	XX				
21	XXI				

28	VIII	dūdētricēns undētricēns tricēns.
29	XXIX	quādratīns undētricēns tricēns.
30	XXX	quādratīns tricēns.
40	XL	quādratīns tricēns.
45	L	quādratīns sēxagīns.
50	LX	quādratīns sēxagīns.
60	LXX	quādratīns sēptagīns.
70	LXXX	quādratīns ōctogīns.
80	LXXXI	quādratīns nōnagīns.
90	XCI	undēcentīns cēntēns.
99	C	cēntēns.
100	CI	cēntēns et ūnīs
101	CC	dūcentīns prīntūs
200	CCC	dūcentīns
300	CCCC	trēcentīns
400	D or Io	quādringēntīns
500	DC	quīngēntīns
600	DCO	sēxēntīns
700	DCOC	sēptingēntīns
800	DCOCO	ōctingēntīns
900	DCCCC	nōngēntīns
1000	M or clo	mīllīs
2000	MM or IIM	dūb mīllīs
5000	VM or Ico	quīngātīa mīllīs
10,000	XM or Icoo	dēcen mīllīs
50,000	LM or Iaco	quīngātīa mīllīs
100,000	cccloo	cēntēna mīllīs
500,000	Iaco	quīngātīa mīllīs
1,000,000	ccccccoo	dēcēs cēntēna mīllīs

§ 47. The first three cardinal numerals are declinable, but the rest up to 200 are indeclinable; two hundred, *dūcenti*, *ae*, *a*, and the other hundreds up to 1000, are plural adjectives of three terminations. *Mille*, a thousand, again is an indeclinable adjective; whereas its plural *millia* is a regular neuter substantive, genitive *millīum*, dative and ablative *millībus*. All ordinal numerals are adjectives of three terminations, *us*, *a*, *um*; and all distributive numerals are plural adjectives of three terminations, *ī*, *ae*, *ā*.

DECLENSION OF THE FIRST THREE CARDINAL NUMERALS.

1.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Unus</i> ,	<i>ūnā</i> ,	<i>ūnum</i> ,	<i>Uni</i>	<i>ūnae</i> ,	<i>ūnā</i> .
G. <i>Unius</i> ,	<i>ūnius</i> ,	<i>ūnius</i> ,	<i>ūnō-rum</i> ,	<i>ūnā-rum</i> ,	<i>ūnō-rum</i> .
D. <i>Unī</i> ,	<i>ūnl</i> ,	<i>ūnl</i> ,	<i>ūnlīs</i> ,	<i>ūnis</i> ,	<i>ūnlīs</i> .
A. <i>Unu-m</i> ,	<i>ūna-m</i> ,	<i>ūnum</i> ,	<i>ūnō-s</i> ,	<i>ūnā-s</i> ,	<i>ūnā</i> .
V. <i>Unā</i> ,	<i>ūnā</i> ,	<i>ūnum</i> ,	<i>Unl</i> ,	<i>ūnae</i> ,	<i>ūnā</i> .
Ab. <i>Unō</i> ,	<i>ūnā</i> ,	<i>ūnō</i> ,	<i>ūnlīs</i> ,	<i>ūnis</i> ,	<i>ūnlīs</i> .

2.

M.	F.	N.
N. & V. <i>Duo</i> ,	<i>duae</i> ,	<i>duo</i> .
G. <i>Duō-rum</i> ,	<i>duā-rum</i> ,	<i>duō-rum</i> .
D. & Ab. <i>Duō-bus</i> ,	<i>duā-bus</i> ,	<i>duō-bus</i> .
A. <i>Duō-s</i> ,	<i>duā-s</i> ,	<i>duo</i> .

3.

M.	F.	N.
N. & V. <i>Trēs</i> ,	<i>trēs</i> ,	<i>tri-ā</i> .
G. <i>Tri-um</i> ,	<i>tri-um</i> ,	<i>tri-um</i> .
D. & Ab. <i>Tri-bus</i> ,	<i>tri-bus</i> ,	<i>trib-us</i> .
A. <i>Trēs</i> ,	<i>trēs</i> ,	<i>tri-ā</i>

NOTE.—*Ambo*, *ae*, *o*, both, is declined like *duo*.

THE PRONOUNS.

NOTE 1.—Distributive numerals are also used instead of cardinals with substantives that have no singular, or have in the plural a different meaning from that in the singular: as *bina castra*, two camps; *binae litterae*, two letters; *binae aedes*, two houses.

NOTE 2.—Fractions are expressed by *pars*, as *dimidia pars* = $\frac{1}{2}$; *tertia pars* = $\frac{1}{3}$; *quarta pars* = $\frac{1}{4}$, etc.

When the number of parts is less by one than that in which the whole is divided, as $\frac{2}{3}$, $\frac{3}{4}$, $\frac{4}{5}$, the fractions are expressed by *duae*, *tres*, *quatuor* (*partes*), that is, two out of three, three out of four, four out of five parts, etc. All other fractions are expressed as in English, as *duae quintae* = $\frac{2}{5}$; *quator septimae* = $\frac{4}{7}$; *quinque octavae* = $\frac{5}{8}$.

CHAPTER XV.

THE PRONOUNS.

§ 48. Many pronouns are in reality adjectives, while some have the force of substantives. They are divided into nine classes:—

1. Personal or Substantive pronouns: *ego*, I; *tū*, thou; *nōs*, we; *vōs*, you.
2. Adjunctive pronouns; *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, self.
3. Demonstrative pronouns: *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, this; *istē*, *istā*, *istūd*, that; *illē*, *illā*, *illūd*, that.
4. Determinative pronouns: *is*, *eā*, *id*, he, she, it, or that; and its derivative *idem*, *eādem*, *idem*, the same.
5. Possessive pronouns: *meus*, a, *um*, my; *tuus*, a, *um*, thy; *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*, our; *vester*, *vestra*, *vestrum*, your.
6. Relative pronouns: *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, who or which, and its compounds, *quicunque* and *quiesquis*, whosoever.
7. Interrogative pronouns: *quis*, *quae*, *quid*, and *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, who? which? or what?
8. Indefinite pronouns: as *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam*, or *quoddam*, some one; *aliquis*, *aliqua*, *aliquid* and *aliquod*, some one or somebody; and several others.
9. Correlative pronouns. See § 55.

§ 49. The Personal Pronouns are substantives, being the direct representatives of a name or names. Their declension is irregular.

1. Personal pronoun of the First Person—

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. <i>Ego,</i>	I. <i>Nos,</i>	we.
G. <i>Meli,</i>	of me.	<i>Nostrī or nostrum,</i> of us.
D. <i>Mīhi,</i>	to or for me.	<i>Nōbis,</i> to or for us.
A. <i>Mē,</i>	me.	<i>Nōs,</i> us.
Ab. <i>Mē,</i> from, with, or by me.	<i>Nōbis,</i>	from, with, or by us.

2. Personal pronoun of the Second Person—

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. & V. <i>Tū,</i>	thou.	<i>Vōs,</i> you.
G. <i>Tul,</i>	of thee.	<i>Vestri or vestrum,</i> of you.
D. <i>Tibi,</i>	to or for thee.	<i>Vōbīs,</i> to or for you.
A. <i>Tē,</i>	thee.	<i>Vōs,</i> you.
Ab. <i>Tē,</i> from, with, or by thee.	<i>Vōbīs,</i>	from, with, or by you.

A pronoun of the third person, answering to the English he, she, it, does not exist in Latin, and instead of it the determinative *is*, *ea*, *id*, or *ille*, *illa*, *illud* is used. What is sometimes called the pronoun of the third person is a reflective pronoun, which occurs only in the oblique cases, and is the same in the singular and plural, and for all genders:

Singular and Plural.

N. Is wanting.		
G. <i>Sui,</i>	of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.	
D. <i>Sibi,</i>	to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.	
A. <i>Sē or sēsē,</i>	himself, herself, itself, or themselves.	
Ab. <i>Sē or sēsē,</i>	from, with, or by himself, herself, etc.	

NOTE.—The genitive plural *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used only in a partitive sense, as *multi nostrum*, many of us; whereas *nostrī* is the regular genitive, as *memor est nostri*, he is mindful of us.

§ 50. The Adjunctive Pronoun, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum* (self, same), is generally added to substantives and other pronouns, and is declined as follows:—

*Singular.**Plural.*

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Ipsē,</i>	<i>ipsā,</i>	<i>ipsum.</i>	<i>Ipsi,</i>	<i>ipsae,</i>	<i>ipsā.</i>
G. <i>Ipsīus,</i>	<i>ipsīus,</i>	<i>ipsīus.</i>	<i>Ipsōrum,</i>	<i>ipsārum,</i>	<i>ipsōrum.</i>
D. <i>Ipsi,</i>	<i>ipsī,</i>	<i>ipsī.</i>	<i>Ipsīs,</i>	<i>ipsīs,</i>	<i>ipsīs.</i>
A. <i>Ipsum,</i>	<i>ipsam.</i>	<i>ipsum.</i>	<i>Ipsōs,</i>	<i>ipsās,</i>	<i>ipsā.</i>
Ab. <i>Ipsō,</i>	<i>ipsā,</i>	<i>ipsō.</i>	<i>Ipsīs,</i>	<i>ipsīs,</i>	<i>ipsīs.</i>

NOTE.—*Ipsē* is a compound of *is*, *ea*, *id*, and the suffix *pse*; hence we find such forms as *eipse* and *cōipse*, *cōimpse*, *cōampsē*, and *reapsē*—that is, *re eipse* or *re ipsa*.

§ 51. There are three Demonstrative Pronouns: viz., *hic, haec, hoc*, this one near me; *iste, ista, istud*, that one near you; and *ille, illa, illud*, that one near him, or yonder. They accordingly correspond to the three personal pronouns.

The first is declined as follows:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Hic,</i>	<i>haec,</i>	<i>hoc.</i>	<i>Hī,</i>	<i>hae,</i>	<i>haec.</i>
G. <i>Hūjus,</i>	<i>hūjus,</i>	<i>hūjus.</i>	<i>Hōrum,</i>	<i>hārum,</i>	<i>hōrum.</i>
D. <i>Hūc,</i>	<i>hūc,</i>	<i>hūc.</i>	<i>Hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs.</i>
A. <i>Hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hoc.</i>	<i>Hōs,</i>	<i>hās,</i>	<i>haec.</i>
Ab. <i>Hōc,</i>	<i>hāc,</i>	<i>hōc.</i>	<i>Hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs.</i>

§ 52. The other demonstrative pronouns, *iste, ista, istud*, and *ille, illa, illud*, are declined like *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*; genitive *istius, illius*; dative *istī, illī*, etc.

§ 53. The Determinative Pronoun, *is, eā, id*, generally refers to a person or thing mentioned before, and thus supplies the place of the personal pronoun of the third person; or it is the antecedent to a relative. Its declension is:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Is,</i>	<i>eā,</i>	<i>id.</i>	<i>II (eī),</i>	<i>eae,</i>	<i>eād.</i>
G. <i>Ejus,</i>	<i>ējus,</i>	<i>ējus.</i>	<i>Eōrum,</i>	<i>eārum,</i>	<i>eōrum.</i>
D. <i>Eī,</i>	<i>eī,</i>	<i>eī.</i>	<i>IIīs (eīs),</i>	<i>IIīs (eīs),</i>	<i>IIīs (eīs).</i>
A. <i>Eum,</i>	<i>eam,</i>	<i>id.</i>	<i>Eōs,</i>	<i>eās,</i>	<i>eā.</i>
Ab. <i>Eō,</i>	<i>eā,</i>	<i>eō.</i>	<i>IIīs (eīs),</i>	<i>IIīs (eīs),</i>	<i>IIīs (eīs).</i>

NOTE.—The derivative *īdem, eādem, idem*, is declined in the same manner. The suffix *dem* being added to the forms of *is*, as genitive *eūxidem*, dative *eīdem*, ablative *eādem*, etc.

§ 54. Possessive Pronouns are adjectives of three terminations; the masculine in *us* and *er* and the neuter in *um* follow the second declension, and the feminine in *a* the first. *Meus* (my) however makes the vocative *mi*, and not *mee*. (See § 20, note 6.)

§ 55. The Relative Pronoun, *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, who, which, or what, is declined as follows:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Qui</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,	<i>quod</i> .	<i>Qui</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,	<i>quae</i> .
G. <i>Cūjus</i> ,	<i>cūjus</i> ,	<i>cūjus</i> .	<i>Quōrum</i> ,	<i>quārum</i> ,	<i>quōrum</i> .
D. <i>Cūl</i> ,	<i>cūl</i> ,	<i>cūl</i> .	<i>Quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> .
A. <i>Quem</i> ,	<i>quam</i> ,	<i>quōd</i> .	<i>Quēs</i> ,	<i>quīs</i> ,	<i>quāe</i> .
Ab. <i>Quō</i> ,	<i>quā</i> .	<i>quōd</i> .	<i>Quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> .

NOTE.—From the relative are formed two indefinite relatives: *qui-cunque*, *quaecunque*, *quodcunque*, whoever or whichever; and *quisquis* (masculine and feminine), *quidquid*, every one or any one who. *Quicunque* is an adjective, and is declined like *qui*, the suffix *cunque* being simply added to the cases, as *cujuscunque*, *cucunque*, etc. *Quisquis* is used both as an adjective and as a substantive, but the neuter *quidquid* occurs only as a substantive. *Quisquis* and *quidquid*, moreover, are defective in declension; for besides these forms we only find the ablative *quōquō*.

§ 56. Of the Interrogative Pronoun there are two forms: *quis*, *quae*, *quid* and *qui*, *quae*, *quod*. The latter is used only as an adjective; *quis* and its feminine *quae* both as substantives and adjectives; but *quid* only as a substantive: as *quid fecit?* what has he done? but *quod facinus admisit?* what deed has he done? Their declension is the same as that of the relative pronoun.

NOTE 1.—When a question is asked with a certain degree of impatience, the suffix *nam* is added to the interrogative pronoun: as *quianam*, *quaenam*, *quidnam*, *quodnam*, *quonam*, etc.

NOTE 2.—When the question is “which of two?” *uter*, *utra*, *utrum*, must be used (see § 57, 9), and not *quis*.

§ 57. Indefinite Pronouns express an indefinite generality. The following are those most frequently met with:—

1. *Aliquis* or *aliqui*, feminine *aliqua*, neuter *aliquid* and *aliquod* (from *alis*, another, and *quis*), properly some one else, then “some one” or “any one.” *Aliquis* and *aliquid* are used as substantives; but *aliqui*, *aliqua*, and *aliquod* as adjectives. Its declension is like that of the relative, except that in the nomina-

tive feminine singular and in the neuter plural the form is *ālīquā* and not *aliquae*.

2. *Equis, ecqua, ecquid*, any one? also *ecqui, ecquae, ecquod*. All forms are declined like the interrogative *quis*.

3. *Quidam, quaedam, quiddam* and *quoddam*, a certain one. The declension is like that of the relative, as *cujusdam, cuiusdam*, etc. *Quiddam* is used as a substantive, and *quoddam* as an adjective.

4. *Quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam*, and *quodpiam*, any one. *Quispiam* is generally used as a substantive, but *quidpiam* always.

5. *Quisquam* (masculine and feminine), *quidquam* (neuter), any one at all, is generally used only in negative clauses. *Quisquam* is both a substantive and an adjective, but has no plural.

6. *Quivis* (any one you wish), *quilibet* (any one you like), and *quisque* (every one), make their other genders *quaevris, quidvis, or quodvis; quelibet, quidlibet, and quodlibet; and queaque, quidque, and quodque*. The neuter forms in *quid* are substantives, those in *quod* adjectives. Their declension is like that of the relative.

7. *Unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquidque, and unumquodque*, every one, is declined in both parts: as *uniuscujusque, unicuique*, etc.

8. *Quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque, whosoever*, is declined like the relative, *cujuscunque, cuicunque*, etc. *Quisquis* (see § 55, note).

Besides these the following pronominal adjectives may be noticed.

9. *Uter, utra, utrum*, which of two? with its compounds *uter-vis, utravis, utrumvis*, which of the two you wish; *uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet*, which of the two you please; *utercunque, utracunque, utrumcunque*, whichever of two; *uterque, utraque, utrumque*, each of two or both; and *alteruter*, either the one or the other. They are all declined like *uter* (see § 20, note 5).

10. *Alter, altera, alterum*, one of two, the other, or the second; genitive *alterius*, dative *alteri*, etc.

11. *Neuter, neutra, neutrum* (from *ne* and *uter*), neither of two, is declined like *uter*.

12. *Alius, alia, aliud*, another (out of many).

13. *Ullus, ulla, ullum*.

14. *Nullus, nulla, nullum*, none, or no one.

§ 58. Correlative Pronouns are mostly adjectives, declinable or indeclinable, which in different forms express

the same idea in a demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and indefinite way, as is shown in the following table :—

Demonstrative.	Relative and Interrogative.	Indefinite Relative.	Indefinite.
<i>Talis, e, such, or of such a kind.</i>	<i>Quālis, e, of such a kind as, or of what kind?</i>	<i>Quālisunque or quālisquālis, of whatever kind.</i>	<i>Quālibet, of any kind you please.</i>
<i>Tantus, a, um, so great.</i>	<i>Quantus, as great as, or how great?</i>	<i>Quantusunque or quantus-quantus, however great.</i>	<i>Aliquantus, of some considerable size.</i>
<i>Tot (indeclinable), so many.</i>	<i>Quot (indeclinable), as many as, and how many?</i>	<i>Quotcunque and quotquot, how manysoever.</i>	<i>Aliquot, some in number.</i>
<i>Totidem (indeclinable), just so many.</i>	—	—	<i>Quolibet, as many as you please.</i>
—	<i>Quotus, what number in a series?</i>	—	—

CHAPTER XVI.

THE VERB IN GENERAL.

§ 59. A Verb expresses an action or a condition in which a person or thing is.

A verb expressing an action is either transitive or intransitive.

Transitive verbs are those which express an action that cannot be fully conceived without an object directly affected by the action. Such an object is generally in

the accusative case : as *amo filium*, I love my son ; *domum emo*, I purchase a house.

Intransitive verbs are those which denote a condition or an action that does not require an object either expressed or understood, but convey by themselves a complete sense: as *curro*, I run; *loquor*, I talk; *ambulo*, I walk; *dormio*, I sleep.

§ 60. Every transitive verb has two voices, the active and the passive—that is, the person or thing acted upon in the active voice, may be conceived as the subject of a sentence enduring or suffering the action, *filius amatur a patre*, the son is loved by the father ; or a person may be conceived as performing the action on himself: as *verto*, I turn, passive *vertor*, I turn myself ; *delecto*, I delight, *delector*, I am delighted, or delight myself; *moveo*, I move, *moveor*, I am moved, or move myself. In the latter case the passive is said to be used in a reflective sense.

Intransitive verbs can only have an impersonal passive—that is, they have a passive only in the third person singular ; as *itur*, the act of going is performed, or they go; *curruntur*, running is going on, or they run; *pugnatur*, fighting is going on, or they fight.

§ 61. There is a large class of verbs which have a passive form with an active (transitive or intransitive) meaning. These are called Deponent verbs ; most of them were originally passives with a reflective meaning : as *utor*, I use ; *vescor*, I feed upon ; *imitor*, I imitate ; *morior*, I die.

A few verbs, on the other hand, have an active form, but a passive meaning : as *fio*, I am made, or become ; *veneo*, I am sold ; *vapulo*, I am beaten. Others, again, have an active form in the tenses denoting an imperfect or incompletely action, but a passive form with an active meaning in the tenses of a completed action : as *audeo*, I dare, perfect *auius sum*, I have dared ; *gaudeo*, I rejoice, *gavissus sum*, I have rejoiced ; *soleo*, I am accustomed, *solutus sum*, I have been accustomed ; *fido*, I trust, *fisus sum*, I have trusted.

§ 62. Some verbs express actions which we do not, or cannot ascribe to a definite agent, and which are used only in the third person singular. These are called **Impersonal verbs**: as *pluit*, it rains; *ningit*, it snows.

§ 63. The active and the passive voice have each three moods (modes of expression) :—

1. The **Indicative**, which states an action or condition simply as a fact, either in the form of an assertion, a negation, or a question: I write a letter; I am not writing a letter; Did he write a letter?
2. The **Subjunctive** represents an action as a mere conception of the mind, as a possibility, a wish, a condition, concession, etc.
3. The **Imperative** expresses a command, either that a thing is to be done at once, or at some future time: as, Write down your name; Thou shalt not steal.

§ 64. The **Infinitive** is only the name of the verb—that is, an indeclinable substantive governing the case of the verb to which it belongs. It exists only in the nominative and accusative, the other cases being supplied by the **Gerund**, which is likewise a verbal substantive.

There is yet a third verbal substantive, called the **Supine**. It belongs to the fourth declension, but occurs only in the accusative and ablative, as *amatum* and *amatu*.

§ 65. **Participles**, as their name implies, partake of the nature of a verb and of an adjective. In form they are adjectives, but in their meaning they are verbs. The active voice has two participles, one for the present and the other for the future: as *amans*, loving; *amaturus*, about to love. The passive has also two participles, the perfect participle and the gerundive: as *amatus*, loved, and *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

Deponent verbs have all the four participles.

§ 66. A Latin verb has six tenses (times), three describing an incompletely action, called **Imperfect tenses**. These are the present, the imperfect, and the future. The three other describe a completed action, and are

called Perfect tenses. They are the perfect, the pluperfect, and the future perfect. The subjunctive mood has only four tenses.

1. The Present denotes an action going on in present time, or one which takes place at all times: *scribo epistolam*, I am writing a letter; *tonitru sequitur fulmen*, thunder follows lightning.
2. The Imperfect represents an action as going on or repeated in past time: as *scribebat*, he was writing, or used to write.
3. The Future describes an action as going on in future time: *scribam*, I shall be writing.
4. The Perfect expresses an action as completed in present time: as *scripti epistolam*, I have written the letter.
5. The Pluperfect describes an action as completed in past time: as *epistolam scriptaeram*, I had written the letter.
6. The Future Perfect denotes an action completed in future time: as *epistolam scribeero*, I shall have written the letter.

§ 67. An action or condition may be ascribed either to one or to more than one person or thing; accordingly, a verb, like a noun, must have both a singular and a plural.

Lastly, as there are three persons—first the person or persons speaking (first person), the person or persons spoken to (second person), and the person or persons spoken of (third person)—a verb has three forms for the singular and three for the plural.

NOTE.—The personal pronouns (I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they) are generally not expressed in Latin.

§ 68. The voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons are generally indicated, as in the declensions, by special suffixes or terminations; and to put a verb through all these forms is called its **Conjugation**.

NOTE.—In order to conjugate a verb it is necessary, as in declension, to know its stem. There are really only two conjugations, the vowel and the consonant conjugation.

The former comprised all verbs the stems of which end in the vowels *a*, *e*, or *i*, and the latter all those the stem of which ends in a consonant or *u*. But as the verbs with vowel stems are not always conjugated in exactly the same manner, it is customary to assume four conjugations, the first being the *a* conjugation, the second the *e* conjugation, the fourth the *i* conjugation, and the third that of verbs whose stem ends in a consonant or *u*.

§ 69. The present indicative in all the conjugations ends in *o*, and the infinitive in *ere*.

Besides the present and infinitive stem, it is necessary to know the perfect indicative and the supine, in order to be able fully to conjugate a verb; for all other tenses are derived from these fundamental forms, and the stems of the perfect and supine often differ considerably from that of the present or infinitive: as in *frang-o* (I break), perfect *freg-i*, supine *frac-tum*.

All the tenses expressing an incompleted action are formed from the present stem, and all the tenses expressing a completed action are formed from the perfect stem. The latter set of tenses in the passive voice are made up of participles derived from the supine and the auxiliary verb *esse*.

§ 70. The personal pronouns are expressed in Latin by personal suffixes. The following table exhibits them in the active and the passive, in both the singular and the plural:—

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
1. Pers. <i>m</i> ,	<i>timus</i> or <i>imus</i> .	1. Pers. <i>r</i> ,	<i>imur.</i>
2. Pers. <i>is</i> (<i>ist<i>l</i></i>),	<i>itis</i> (<i>ist<i>is</i></i>).	2. Pers. <i>ēris</i> ,	<i>imini.</i>
3. Pers. <i>it</i> ,	<i>unt</i> (<i>ont</i>).	3. Pers. <i>itur</i> ,	<i>untur.</i>

NOTE 1.—The *m* is dropped in the present and perfect indicative active, as also in the future of the first and second conjugations: as *amo*, *deleo*, *rego*, *audio*; *amavi*, *delevi*, *rexi*, *audivi*; and *amabo*, *delebo*.

NOTE 2.—In cases where the personal suffix begins with a vowel and the stem ends in a vowel, the former is absorbed by the latter: *amas* for *amai*, *amabas* for *amabai*.

NOTE 3.—In forming the passive an *r* is added to the *o* of the active; and where the active ends in *m*, this *m* is changed into *r*: as *amo*, *deleo*, *anabo*, *delebo* make the passive *amor*, *deleor*, *amabor*, *delebor*.

NOTE 4.—The consonant conjugation has preserved the personal suffixes more completely than any of the vowel conjugations.

§ 71. Besides the personal suffixes, there are the tense suffixes.

The perfect of verbs with vowel stems generally ends in *vi* (that is, the perfect stem ends in *v*); but the majority of the verbs belonging to the *e* conjugation throw out

the short *e* of the stem, and change it in the supine into *i*, as *mone-o*, *mon-u(v)i*, *monitum*. In the consonant conjugation the perfect frequently ends in *si*—i.e., the perfect stem ends in *s*: as *scribo*, *scrips-i*; *rego*, *rex-i*.

The supine in all conjugations generally ends in *tum*, from which the past participle passive in *tus*, *ta*, *tum*, and the future participle active in *turus*, *tura*, *turum* are formed.

The present participle ends in *ens*, and the gerund in *endum*, with its gerundive in *endus*, *a*, *um*; but the initial *e* is lost after *a* and *e*: as *amans*, *amandum*; *delens*, *delendum*; but *scrib-ens*, *scrib-endum*; *audiens*, *audiendum*.

CHAPTER XVII.

THE VERB *esse*, TO BE.

§ 72. The stem of the verb *esse* is *es*, so that *sum*, *sunus*, *sunt*, *sim*, etc., stand for *esum*, *esumus*, *esunt*, *esim*, etc. Its conjugation is defective, as it possesses only the imperfect tenses; the perfect tenses are supplied from the totally different stem *fu*. In some cases the *s* of the stem *es* is changed into *r*, as *eram* and *ero* for *esam* and *eso*.

<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Present Indicative.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Present Infinitive.</i>		
	<i>Sum.</i>	<i>FuL.</i>	<i>Essō.</i>		
INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		
<i>Present.</i>					
Sing.	S-um , I am. Es, thou art. Es-t, he (she or it) is.		S-im , I am, or may be. S-is, thou art, or mayest be. S-it, he is, or may be.		
Plur.	S-umus , we are. Es-tis, you are. S-unt, they are.		S-imus , we are, or may be. S-itis, you are, or may be. S-int, they are, or may be.		

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

Sing. Er-am, I was.	Es-sem, I was, might, or should be.
Er-ās, thou wert.	Es-sēs, thou wert, mightst, or shouldst be.
Er-āt, he (she or it) was.	Es-sēt, he was, etc.
Plur. Er-āmūs, we were.	Es-sāmūs, we were, etc.
Er-ātis, you were.	Es-sētis, you were, etc.
Er-ant, they were.	Es-sent, they were, etc.

Future.

Sing. Er-o, I shall be.	None.
Er-is, thou wilt be.	
Er-it, he will be.	
Plur. Er-āmūs, we shall be.	
Er-ātis, you will be.	
Er-unt, they will be.	

Perfect.

Sing. Fu-ī, I was, or have been.	Fu-ērim, I have been, or may have been.
Fu-isti, thou wert, or hast been.	Fu-ēris, thou hast been, or mayst have been.
Fu-it, he was, or has been.	Fu-ērit, he has been, etc.
Plur. Fu-āmūs, we were, or have been.	Fu-ērimus, we have been, etc.
Fu-ātis, you were, or have been.	Fu-ēritis, you have been, etc.
Fu-ārunt, or fuāre, they were, or have been.	Fu-ērint, they have been, etc.

Pluperfect.

Sing. Fu-ēram, I had been.	Fu-issēm, I had been, or I might or should have been.
Fu-ērās, thou hadst been.	Fu-issēs, thou hadst been, or thou mightst or wouldst have been.
Fu-ērāt, he had been.	Fu-issēt, he had been, etc.
Plur. Fu-ērāmūs, we had been.	Fu-issēmūs, we had been, etc.
Fu-ērātis, you had been.	Fu-issētis, you had been, etc.
Fu-ērant, they had been.	Fu-issēnt, they had been, etc.

INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Sing. **Fu-éro**, I shall have been.
Fu-érīs, thou wilt have
 been.
Fu-érīt, he will have been.

Plur. **Fu-érīmūs**, we shall have
 been.
Fu-érītis, you will have
 been.
Fu-érīnt, they will have
 been.

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

Sing. **Es**, be thou.

Plur. **Es-tō**, be ye.

Future.

Es-tō, thou shalt be.
Es-tō, he shall be.

Es-tōtē, you shall be.
S-untō, they shall be.

INFINITIVE.

Present Infinitive, **Es-sō**, to be.

Perfect Infinitive, **Fu-issō**, to have been.

Future Infinitive, **Fu-tūrum**, am, um, *esse*, or *förō*, to be about
 to be.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, does not exist.

Future, **Fu-tūrus**, a, um, one who is to be, or is about to be.

NOTE 1.—The verb *esse* has neither gerund nor supine. The present participle, if it did exist, would be *es-ens*, or *sens*, as it actually occurs in the compounds, *ab-sens*, absent (from *absum*), and *praes-sens*, present (from *praesum*).

NOTE 2.—The compounds *absum*, I am away from; *adsum*, I am present; *desum*, I am wanting or missing; *insum*, I am in; *intersum*, I am between or among; *obsum*, I am against or in the way; *praesum*, I am before or at the head; *prosum*, I am useful; *subsum*, I am under; *supersum*, I am over, I am left—are all conjugated like the simple *sum*. *Prosum*, however, inserts a *d* wherever the *pro* is followed by the radical vowel *e*: as *prod-est*, *prod-crām*, *prod-essem*, *prod-ero*, *prod-esse*; but *prosum*, *prosim*, *profui*, etc., do not require it. *Possum* (I am able, or I can) is composed of *potis sum* or *pot sum*; but its conjugation is irregular (see Irregular Verbs).

NOTE 3.—Instead of the infinitive *futurum* (*am*, *um*) *esse*, there is another form, *före* (from *fuo*); and instead of the imperfect subjunctive *essem*, we have (likewise from *fuo*) *förem*, *föres*, *föret*, and *förent*, which are frequently used by the best writers, especially in conditional clauses.

CHAPTER XVIII.

§ 73.

FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.

<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
<i>Amā.</i>	<i>Amō.</i>	<i>Amā-vi.</i>	<i>Amā-tum.</i>	<i>Amā-re.</i>

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. <i>Amō</i> , I love, or am loving. <i>Amā-s</i> , thou lovest. <i>Amā-t</i> , he loves.	<i>Am-ēm</i> , I love, or may love. <i>Am-ēs</i> , thou lovest, or mayst love. <i>Am-ēt</i> , he loves, or may love.
Plur. <i>Amā-mūs</i> , we love. <i>Amā-tīs</i> , you love. <i>Amā-nt</i> , they love.	<i>Am-ēmūs</i> , we love, or may love. <i>Am-ētīs</i> , you love, or may love. <i>Am-ēnt</i> , they love, or may love.

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Amā-bam</i> , I was loving, or I loved. <i>Amā-bās</i> , thou wert loving, or lovedst. <i>Amā-bāt</i> , he was loving, or loved.	<i>Amā-rem</i> , I loved, might, or should love. <i>Amā-rēs</i> , thou lovedst, mightst, or shouldst love. <i>Amā-rēt</i> , he loved, might, or should love.
Plur. <i>Amā-bāmūs</i> , we were loving, or we loved. <i>Amā-bātīs</i> , you were loving or loved. <i>Amā-bānt</i> , they were lov- ing or loved.	<i>Amā-rēmūs</i> , we loved, might, or should love. <i>Amā-rētīs</i> , you loved, might, or should love. <i>Amā-rent</i> , they loved, might, or should love.

Future.

Sing. <i>Amā-bo</i> , I shall love. <i>Amā-bis</i> , thou wilt love. <i>Amā-bit</i> , he will love.	None.
Plur. <i>Amā-bimūs</i> , we shall love. <i>Amā-bītīs</i> , you will love. <i>Amā-bunt</i> , they will love.	

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. Amā-vi , I loved, or have loved.	Amā-vērim , I have loved, or may have loved.
Amā-vistī , thou lovedst, or hast loved.	Amā-vēria , thou hast loved, or mayst have loved.
Amā-vit , he loved, or has loved.	Amā-vērit , he has loved, etc.
Plur. Amā-vimūs , we loved, or have loved.	Amā-vērlmūs , we have loved, etc.
Amā-vistis , you loved, or have loved.	Amā-vēritis , you have loved, etc.
Amā-vērunt , or amā-vērē , they loved, or have loved.	Amā-vērint , they have loved, etc.

Pluperfect.

Sing. Amā-vēram , I had loved.	Amā-vissēm , I had, might, or should have loved.
Amā-vērās , thou hadst loved.	Amā-vissēs , thou hadst, mightst, or shouldst have loved.
Amā-vērāt , he had loved.	Amā-vissēt , he had, etc.
Plur. Amā-vērāmūs , we had loved.	Amā-vissēmūs , we had, etc.
Amā-vērātis , you had loved.	Amā-vissētis , you had, etc.
Amā-vērant , they had loved.	Amā-vissēnt , they had, etc.

Future Perfect.

Sing. Amā-vēro , I shall have loved.	
Amā-vērls , thou wilt have loved.	
Amā-vērlt , he will have loved.	
Plur. Amā-vērlmūs , we shall have loved.	None.
Amā-vēritis , you will have loved.	
Amā-vērint , they will have loved.	

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Sing. Ama , love thou.	Ama-tō , thou shalt love. Ama-tō , he shall love.
Plur. Ama-tō , love ye.	Ama-tōtō , ye shall love. Ama-ntō , they shall love.

INFINITIVE.

Present, **Ama-rē**, to love.*Perfect*, **Ama-vissō**, to have loved.*Future*, **Ama-tūrum** (*am*, *um*) *esse*, to be about to love.

GERUND.

Gen. Ama-ndī , of loving.
Dat. Ama-ndō , to loving.
Acc. Ama-ndum , loving.
Abl. Ama-ndō , with or by loving.

SUPINE.

Ama-tum, (in order) to love; and **amā-tū**, to be loved.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, **Ama-ns**, loving.*Future*, **Ama-tūrus**, a. um, being about to love.

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

Sing. **Amōr**, I am loved.**Amā-ris** or **rē**, thou art loved.**Amā-tūr**, he is loved.Plur. **Amā-mūr**, we are loved.**Amā-minī**, you are loved.**Amā-ntūr**, they are loved.

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Am-ār, I am loved, or may be loved.**Am-āris** or **am-ārē**, thou art loved, or mayst be loved.**Am-ātūr**, he is loved, etc.**Am-āmūr**, we are loved, etc.**Am-āminī**, you are loved, etc.**Am-āntūr**, they are loved, etc.

INDICATIVE,

SUBJUNCTIVE,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<u>Amā-bär</u> , I was loved, or was being loved.	<u>Amā-rär</u> , I was, might be, or should be loved.
	<u>Amā-bärɪs</u> or <u>bärë</u> , thou wert loved, etc.	<u>Amā-rärɪs</u> or <u>rärë</u> , thou wert, etc.
	<u>Amā-bätür</u> , he was loved, etc.	<u>Amā-rätür</u> , he was, etc.
Plur.	<u>Amā - bämür</u> , we were loved, etc.	<u>Amā-rämür</u> , we were, etc.
	<u>Amā - bämɪnɪ</u> , you were loved, etc.	<u>Amā-rämɪnɪ</u> , you were, etc.
	<u>Amā-bantür</u> , they were loved, etc.	<u>Amā-rentür</u> , they were, etc.

Future.

Sing.	<u>Amā-bör</u> , I shall be loved. <u>Amā-bérɪs</u> or <u>bérë</u> , thou wilt be loved. <u>Amā-bitür</u> , he will be loved.	None
Plur.	<u>Amā-bimür</u> , we shall be loved. <u>Amā-bimɪnɪ</u> , you will be loved. <u>Amā-buntür</u> , they will be loved.	

Perfect.

Sing.	<u>Amā-tüs</u> (ä, um) sum, I was or have been loved. <u>Amā-tüs</u> (ä, um) es, thou wert, etc. <u>Amā-tüs</u> (ä, um) est, he was, etc.	<u>Amā-tüs</u> (ä, um) sim, I have been, or may have been, loved. <u>Amā-tüs</u> (ä, um) sis, thou hast been, etc. <u>Amā-tüs</u> (ä, um) sit, he has been, etc.
Plur.	<u>Amā-ti</u> (ae, ä) sumus, we were, etc. <u>Amā-ti</u> (ae, ä) estis, you were, etc. <u>Amā-ti</u> (ae, ä) sunt, they were, etc.	<u>Amā-ti</u> (ae, ä) simus, we have been, etc. <u>Amā-ti</u> (ae, ä) sitis, you have been, etc. <u>Amā-ti</u> (ae, ä) sint, they have been, etc.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pluperfect.

Sing. Ama-tus (a, um) eram, I had been loved.	Ama-tus (a, um) essem, I had been, might, or should have been loved.
Ama-tus (a, um) eras, thou hadst been loved.	Ama-tus (a, um) esses, thou hadst been, etc.
Ama-tus (a, um) erat, he had been loved.	Ama-tus (a, um) esset, he had been, etc.
Plur. Ama-ti (ae, a) eramus, we had been loved.	Ama-ti (ae, a) essemus, we had been, etc.
Ama-ti (ae, a) eratis, you had been loved.	Ama-ti (ae, a) essetis, you had been, etc.
Ama-ti (ae, a) erant, they had been loved.	Ama-ti (ae, a) essent, they had been, etc.

Future Perfect.

Sing. Ama-tus (a, um) ero, I shall have been loved.	None.
Ama-tus (a, um) eris, thou wilt, etc.	
Amatus (a, um) erit, he will, etc.	
Plur. Ama-ti (ae, a) erimus, we shall, etc.	
Ama-ti (ae, a) eritis, you will, etc.	
Ama-ti (ae, a) erunt, they will, etc.	

IMPERATIVE.

*Present.**Future.*

Sing. Ama-rē , be thou loved.	Amā-tōr , thou shalt be loved.
	Amā-tōr , he shall be loved.
Plur. Amā-minī , be ye loved.	Amā-bimīnī , ye shall be loved.

Amā-ntōr, they shall be loved.

INFINITIVE.

Present, **Ama-ri**, to be loved.

Perfect, **Ama-tum**, (am, um) **esse**, to have been loved.

Future, **Ama-tum iri**, to be about to be loved.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, **Ama-tus**, a, um, loved.

Gerundive, **Ama-ndūs**, a, um, deserving or requiring to be loved.

SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.

§ 74. The second, being a vowel conjugation like the first and fourth, might form the perfect by adding *vi*, and the supine by adding *tum* to the stem: as in *dele-o*, *dele-vi*, *dele-tum*; but this is the case only in very few *e* verbs; by far the greater number throw out the *ē* before the *vi* or *ui* of the perfect, and change it into *i* before the *tum* of the supine: as stem *mone*, present *mone-o*, perfect *mone-ui* (that is, *mon-vi*), supine *moni-tum*.

Active Voice.

<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
<i>Mōnē</i> .	<i>Mōne-o.</i>	<i>Mōn-eui.</i>	<i>Mōni-tum.</i>	<i>Mōnē-re.</i>

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. *Mōne-o*, I advise, or am *Mōne-am*, I advise, or may advise.

Mōnē-s, thou advisest.

Mōnē-t, he advises.

Mōne-ās, thou advisest, or may advise.

Mōne-āt, he advises, or may advise.

Plur. *Mōnē-mus*, we advise.

Mōne-āmus, we advise, or may advise.

Mōnē-tis, you advise.

Mōne-ātis, you advise, or may advise.

Mōne-nt, they advise.

Mōne-ānt, they advise, or may advise.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Mōnē-bam*, I was advising.

Mōnē-rem, I advised, should, or might advise.

Mōnē-bās, thou wast advising.

Mōnē-rēs, thou advisest, or might advise.

Mōnē-bat, he was advising.

Mōnē-rēt, he advised, or might advise.

Plur. *Mōnē-bāmus*, we were advising.

Mōnē-rēmus, we advised, or might advise.

Mōnē-bātis, you were advising.

Mōnē-rētis, you advised, or might advise.

Mōnē-bānt, they were advising.

Mōnē-rēnt, they advised, or might advise.

INDICATIVE.

Future.

Sing.	Mōnē-bo , I shall advise. Monē-bis , thou wilt advise. Monē-bit , he will advise.	None.
Plur.	Monē-bimus , we shall advise. Monē-bitis , you will advise. Monē-bunt , they will advise.	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

		<i>Perfect.</i>
Sing.	Mōn-uī , I advised, or have advised. Mon-uisti , thou advisedst, or hast advised. Mon-uīt , he advised, or has advised.	Mōn-uōrim , I may have advised. Mon-uōria , thou mayst have advised. Mon-uōrit , he may have advised.
Plur.	Mon-uōrimus , we advised, or have advised. Mon-uōritis , you advised, or have advised. Mon-uōrunt or uōre , they advised, or have advised.	

Pluperfect.

Sing.	Mōn-uōram , I had advised. Mon-uōras , thou hadst advised. Mon-uōrat , he had advised.	Mōn-uissēm , I might or should have advised. Mon-uissēs , thou mightst or wouldst have advised. Mon-uissēt , he might or would have advised.
Plur.	Mon-uōrāmus , we had advised. Mon-uōrātis , you had advised. Mon-uōrant , they had advised.	Mon-uissēmus , we might or should have advised. Mon-uissētis , you might or would have advised. Mon-uissēnt , they might or would have advised.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future Perfect.

Sing.	Mön-uëro, I shall have advised.	None.
	Mon-uëris, thou wilt have advised.	
	Mon-uërit, he will have advised.	
Plur.	Mon-uërimus, we shall have advised.	
	Mon-uëritis, you will have advised.	
	Mon-uërint, they will have advised.	

IMPERATIVE.

*Present.**Future.*

Sing.	Mönë, advise thou.	Mönë-to, thou, or he shall advise.
Plur.	Mönë-të, advise ye.	Mönë-töte, you shall advise. Mönë-nto, they shall advise.

INFINITIVE.

Present, Mönë-re, to advise.*Perfect*, Mön-uisse, to have advised.*Future*, Moni-turum (am, um) esse, to be about to advise.

GERUND.

Gen.	Möne-ndI, of advising.
Dat.	Möne-ndö, to, or for advising.
Acc.	Möne-ndum, advising.
Abl.	Möne-ndö, by, or in advising.

SUPINE.

Acc. Möni-tum, in order to advise.

Abl. Moni-tü, to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, Möne-ns, advising.*Future*, Möni-turus, about to advise.

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. Mōne-or, I am advised.	Mōne-ar, I am, or may be advised.
Monē-ris or re, thou art advised.	Mone-āris or āre, thou art, or mayst be advised.
Monē-tur, he is advised.	Mone-ātūr, he is, or may be advised.
Plur. Monē-mur, we are advised.	Mone-āmūr, we are, or may be advised.
Monē-mīni, you are advised.	Mone-āmīni, you are, or may be advised.
Monē-ntur, they are advised.	Mone-āntūr, they are, or may be advised.

Imperfect.

Sing. Mōnē-bar, I was being advised.	Mōnē-rer, I might or should be advised.
Monē-bāris or bāre, thou wast being advised.	Monē-rēris or rēre, thou mightst be advised.
Monē-bātūr, he was being advised.	Monē-rētūr, he might be advised.
Plur. Monē-bāmūr, we were being advised.	Monē-rēmūr, we might be advised.
Monē-bāmīni, you were being advised.	Monē-rēmīni, you might be advised.
Monē-bāntūr, they were being advised.	Monē-rentūr, they might be advised.

Future.

Sing. Mōnē-bor, I shall be advised.	
Monē-bōris or bōre, thou wilt be advised.	
Monē-bitūr, he will be advised.	
Plur. Monē-bimūr, we shall be advised.	None.
Monē-bimīni, you will be advised.	
Monē-buntūr, they will be advised.	

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. Mönl-tus (a, um) sum, I was, or have been advised.

Mönl-tus (a, um) es, thou wast, or hast been advised.

Mönl-tus (a, um) est, he was, or has been advised.

Plur. Mönl-ti (ae, a) sumus, we were, or have been advised.

Mönl-ti (ae, a) estis, you were, or have been advised.

Mönl-ti (ae, a) sunt, they were, or have been advised.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Mönl-tus (a, um) sim, I may have been advised.

Mönl-tus (a, um) sis, thou mayst have been advised.

Mönl-tus (a, um) sit, he may have been advised.

Mönl-ti (ae, a) simus, we may have been advised.

Mönl-ti (ae, a) sitis, you may have been advised.

Mönl-ti (ae, a) sint, they may have been advised.

Pluperfect.

Sing. Mönl-tus (a, um) eram, I had been advised.

Mönl-tus (a, um) eras, thou hadst been advised.

Mönl-tus (a, um) erat, he had been advised.

Mönl-tus (a, um) essem, I might or should have been advised.

Mönl-tus (a, um) esses, thou mightst have been advised.

Mönl-tus (a, um) esset, he might have been advised.

Plur. Mönl-ti (ae, a) eramus, we had been advised.

Mönl-ti (ae, a) eratis, you had been advised.

Mönl-ti (ae, a) erant, they had been advised.

Mönl-ti (ae, a) essemus, we might have been advised.

Mönl-ti (ae, a) essetis, you might have been advised.

Mönl-ti (ae, a) essent, they might have been advised.

Future Perfect.

Sing. Mönl-tus (a, um) ero, I shall have been advised.

Mönl-tus (a, um) eris, thou wilt have been advised.

Mönl-tus (a, um) erit, he will have been advised.

None.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future Perfect.

Plur. Moni-ti (ae, a) erimus , we shall have been advised.	None.
Moni-ti (ae, a) eritis , you will have been advised.	
Moni-ti (ae, a) erunt , they will have been advised.	

IMPERATIVE.

*Present.**Future.*

Sing. Mönö-re , be thou advised.	Mönö-tor , thou, or he shall be advised.
Plur. Monö-mini , be ye advised.	Monö-bimini , you shall be ad- vised. Möne-tor , they shall be ad- vised.

INFINITIVE.

Present, **Mönö-ri**, to be advised.*Perfect*, **Möni-tum (am, um) esse**, to have been advised.*Future*, **Möni-tum iri**, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, **Möni-tus, a, um**, advised.*Gerundive*, **Möne-ndus, a, um**, deserving or requiring to be
advised.

§ 75. THIRD OR CONSONANT CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.

Stem.	Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	Infinitive.
Scrib.	Scrib-ō.	Scrip-si.	Scrip-tum.	Scrib-ōrē.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. Scrib-bo , I write.	Scrib-am , I write, or may write.
Scrib-is , thou writest.	Scrib-ās , thou writest, or mayst write.
Scrib-it , he writes.	Scrib-āt , he writes, etc.
Plur. Scrib-imūs , we write.	Scrib-āmūs , we write, etc.
Scrib-ītis , you write.	Scrib-ātis , you write, etc.
Scrib-unt , they write.	Scrib-ānt , they write, etc.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

Sing.	Scrib-ëbam , I wrote, or was writing. Scrib-ëbäs , thou wrotest, or wast writing. Scrib-ëbät , he wrote, etc.	Scrib-ërem , I wrote, might, or should write. Scrib-ërës , thou wrotest, mightst, or wouldst write. Scrib-ërët , he wrote, etc.
Plur.	Scrib-ëbämüs , we wrote, etc. Scrib-ëbäts , you wrote, etc. Scrib-ëbant , they wrote, etc.	Scrib-ërämus , we wrote, etc. Scrib-ëräts , you wrote, etc. Scrib-ërent , they wrote, etc.

Future.

Sing.	Scrib-am , I shall write. Scrib-ës , thou wilt, etc. Scrib-ët , he will, etc.	None.
Plur.	Scrib-ëmus , we shall, etc. Scrib-ëtis , you will, etc. Scrib-ënt , they will, etc.	

Perfect.

Sing.	Scrip-si , I wrote, or have written. Scrip-sisti , thou wrotest, or hast written. Scrip-sit , he wrote, etc.	Scrip-sërim , I have, or may have written. Scrip-sëris , thou hast, or mayst have written. Scrip-sërit , he has, etc.
Plur.	Scrip-simüs , we wrote, etc. Scrip-sistis , you wrote, etc. Scrip-sërunt , or sëre , they wrote, etc.	Scrip-sërimus , we have, etc. Scrip-sëritis , you have, etc. Scrip-sërint , they have, etc.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	Scrip-sëram , I had writ- ten. Scrip-sëräs , thou hadst, etc. Scrip-sërät , he had, etc.	Scrip-sissem , I had, might, or should have written. Scrip-sissës , thou hadst, mightst, or wouldst have written. Scrip-sissët , he had, etc.
-------	---	---

INDICATIVE.

Plusperfect.

Plur. Scrip-sérāmūs , we had, etc.	Scrip-sissāmūs , we had, etc.
Scrip-sérātis , you had, etc.	Scrip-sissētis , you had, etc.
Scrip-sérant , they had, etc.	Scrip-sissent , they had, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future Perfect.

Sing. Scrip-sōro , I shall have written, etc.	
Scrip-sōris , thou wilt have written.	
Scrip-sōrit , he will have written.	
Plur. Scrip-sōrimus , we shall have, etc.	None.

Present.

Sing. Scrib-ē , write thou.	
Plur. Scrib-ētē , write ye.	

IMPERATIVE.

Future.

Scrib-īto , thou shalt write.	
Scrib-īto , he shall write.	

Scrib-ītōte , you shall write.	
Scrib-īnto , they shall write.	

INFINITIVE.

Present, **Scrib-ērē**, to write.*Perfect*, **Scrip-sissē**, to have written.*Future*, **Scrip-tūrum** (*am*, *um*) *esse*, to be about to write.

GERUND.

Gen. **Scrib-endī**, of writing.Dat. **Scrib-endo**, to writing.Acc. **Scrib-endūm**, writing.Abl. **Scrib-endō**, by or in writing.

SUPINE.

Scrip-tūm, (in order) to write; **Scrip-tū**, to be written.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, **Scrib-ens**, writing.*Future*, **Scrip-tūrūs**, about to write.

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing.	Scrib-or , I am, or am being written. Scrib-ōris , or rō, thou art, or art being written. Scrib-Itür , he is, etc.	Scrib-ar , I am, or may be written. Scrib-ōris , or īrō, thou art, or mayst be written. Scrib-Ātür , he is, or may be, etc.
Plur.	Scrib-īmür , we are, etc. Scrib-īmīnī , you are, etc. Scrib-untür , they are, etc.	Scrib-āmür , we are, etc. Scrib-āmīnī , you are, etc. Scrib-antür , they are, etc.

Imperfect.

Sing.	Scrib-ēbär , I was, or was being written. Scrib-ēbāris or bārō. Scrib-ēbätür .	Scrib-ērer , I was written, might, or should be written. Scrib-ērōris or rērō. Scrib-ērētür .
Plur.	Scrib-ēbāmür . Scrib-ēbāmīnī . Scrib-ēbāntür .	Scrib-ērēmür . Scrib-ērēmīnī . Scrib-ērentür .

Future.

Sing.	Scrib-ēr , I shall be written. Scrib-ēris , or īrō. Scrib-ētür .	
Plur.	Scrib-ēmür . Scrib-ēmīnī . Scrib-ēntür .	None.

Perfect.

Sing.	Scrip-tūs (a, um) sum, I was, or have been written. Scrip-tus (a, um) es. Scrip-tus (a, um) est.	Scrip-tūs (a, um) sim, I have, or may have been written. Scrip-tus (a, um) sis. Scrip-tus (a, um) sit.
Plur.	Scrip-ti (ae, a) sūmus. Scrip-ti (ae, a) estis. Scrip-ti (ae, a) sunt.	Scrip-ti (ae, a) simus. Scrip-ti (ae, a) sitis. Scrip-ti (ae, a) sint.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pluperfect.

Sing. Scrip-tūs (a, um) eram, I had been written.	Scrip-tūs (a, um) essem, I had been, might, or should have been written.
Scrip-tūs (a, um) eras.	Scrip-tūs (a, um) essea.
Scrip-tūs (a, um) erat.	Scrip-tūs (a, um) esset.
Plur. Scrip-tī (ae, a) eramus.	Scrip-tī (ae, a) essemus.
Scrip-tī (ae, a) eratis.	Scrip-tī (ae, a) essetis.
Scrip-tī (ae, a) erant.	Scrip-tī (ae, a) essent.

Future Perfect.

Sing. Scrip-tūs (a, um) ero, I shall have been written.	None.
Scrip-tūs (a, um) eris.	
Scrip-tūs (a, um) erit.	
Plur. Scrip-tī (ae, a) erimus.	
Scrip-tī (ae, a) eritis.	
Scrip-tī (ae, a) erunt.	

IMPERATIVE.

*Present.**Future.*

Sing. Scrib-ērō, be thou written.	Scrib-itōr, thou shalt be written. Scrib-itōr, he shall be written.
Plur. Scrib-imīnī, be ye written.	Scrib-ēmīnī, ye shall be written. Scrib-u-nōr, they shall be written.

INFINITIVE.

Present, Scrib-I, to be written.*Perfect*, Scrip-tum (am, um) esse, to have been written.*Future*, Scrip-tum Irl, to be about to be written.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, Scrip-tūs (a, um), written.*Gerundive*, Scrib-endūs (a, um), requiring, or deserving to be written.

§ 76. FOURTH OR i CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.

<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Audi.	Audi-ō.	Audi-vi.	Audi-tum.	Audi-rē.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. Audi-ō, I hear, or am hearing.

Audi-a.	Audi-ia.
Audi-t.	Audi-it.

Plur. Audi-müs.

Audi-tis.	Audi-īmüs.
Audi-unt.	Audi-ītis.

Imperfect.

Sing. Audi-ēbam, I heard, or was hearing.

Audi-ēbā.	Audi-rēa.
Audi-ēbāt.	Audi-rēt.

Plur. Audi-ēbāmüs.

Audi-ēbātis.	Audi-rēmüs.
Audi-ēbānt.	Audi-rētis.

Future.

Sing. Audi-am, I shall hear.

Audi-ēs.	
Audi-ēt.	None.

Plur. Audi-ēmüs.

Audi-ētis.	
Audi-ēnt.	

Perfect.

Sing. Audi-vi, I heard, or have heard.

Audi-vistī.	Audi-vērim.
Audi-vit.	Audi-vēris.

Plur. Audi-vimüs.

Audi-vistis.	Audi-vērimüs.
Audi-vērunt, or vērē.	Audi-vēritis.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	Audi-vēram, I had heard.	Audi-vissēm, I had heard, etc.
	Audi-vēris.	Audi-vissēs.
	Audi-vērit.	Audi-vissēt.
Plur.	Audi-vērimūs.	Audi-vissēmūs.
	Audi-vēritis.	Audi-vissētis.
	Audi-vērant.	Audi-vissent.

Future Perfect.

Sing.	Audi-vēro, I shall have heard.	
	Audi-vēris.	
	Audi-vērit.	
Plur.	Audi-vērimūs.	None.
	Audi-vēritis.	
	Audi-vērint.	

IMPERATIVE.

*Present.**Future.*

Sing.	Audi, hear thou.	Audi-to, thou shalt hear. Audi-to, he shall hear.
Plur.	Audi-tō, hear ye.	Audi-tōtē, you shall hear. Audi-unto, they shall hear.

INFINITIVE.

Present, Audi-rē, to hear.*Perfect*, Audi-vissē, to have heard.*Future*, Audi-tūrum (am, um) esse, to be about to hear.

GERUND.

- Gen. Audi-endī, of hearing.
 Dat. Audi-endō, to hearing.
 Acc. Audi-endum, hearing.
 Abl. Audi-endō, by, or in hearing.

SUPINE.

Audi-tūm, (in order) to hear; Audi-tūl, to be heard.

PARTICIPLES.

- Present*, Audi-sns, hearing.
Future, Audi-tūrūs, about to hear.

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing.	Audi-or, I am heard. Audi-ris. Audi-tür.	Audi-är, I am, or may be heard. Audi-ärka. Audi-ätkär.
-------	--	--

Plur.	Audi-mür. Audi-minI. Audi-untur.	Audi-ämür. Audi-äminI. Audi-antur.
-------	--	--

Imperfect.

Sing.	Audi-ëbar, I was heard. Audi-ëbars or bärä. Audi-ëbatür.	Audi-rär, I was heard, etc. Audi-räris or rärä. Audi-rätür.
-------	--	---

Plur.	Audi-ëbämür. Audi-ëbäminI. Audi-ëbantür.	Audi-rämür. Audi-räminI. Audi-rentur.
-------	--	---

Future.

Sing.	Audi-är, I shall be heard. Audi-äris. Audi-ëtür.	
-------	--	--

Plur.	Audi-ëmür. Audi-ëminI. Audi-entür.	None.
-------	--	-------

Perfect.

Sing.	Audi-tus sum, I have been heard. Audi-tus es. Audi-tus est.	Audi-tüs sim, I have been heard, etc. Audi-tus sia. Audi-tus sit.
-------	--	--

Plur.	Audi-ti sumus. Audi-ti estis. Audi-ti sunt.	Audi-ti simus. Audi-ti sitia. Audi-ti sint.
-------	---	---

Psuperfect.

Sing.	Audi-tüs eram, I had been heard. Audi-tus eras. Audi-tus erat.	Audi-tüs essem, I had been heard, etc. Audi-tus essea. Audi-tus esset.
-------	---	---

INDICATIVE.

Plur. Audi-ti eramus.
 Audi-ti eratis.
 Audi-ti erant.

Pluperfect.

Audi-ti essemus.
 Audi-ti essetis.
 Audi-ti essent.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future Perfect.

Sing. Audi-tus ero, I shall have been heard. Audi-tus eris. Audi-tus erit.	Audi-ti essemus. Audi-ti essetis. Audi-ti essent.
Plur. Audi-ti erimus. Audi-ti eritis. Audi-ti erunt.	None.

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

Sing. Audi-re, be thou heard.

Future.

Audi-tor, thou shalt be heard.
 Audi-tor, he shall be heard.

Plur. Audi-mi, be ye heard.

Audi-smi, ye shall be heard.
 Audi-untor, they shall be heard.

INFINITIVE.

Present, Audi-ri, to be heard.

Perfect, Audi-tum (am, um) esse, to have been heard.

Future, Audi-tum iri, to be about to be heard.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, Audi-tus (a, um), heard.

Gerundive, Audi-endus (a, um), deserving, or requiring to be heard.

§ 77. Besides the ordinary forms of conjugation, as exhibited in the preceding tables, the Latin language has two complete periphrastic conjugations, one of which

is formed by a paraphrase with the verb **sum** and the future participle, as:

Ama-turus (a, um) sum,	I am about to love.
Ama-turus (a, um) eram,	I was about to love.
Ama-turus (a, um) ero,	I shall be about to love.
Ama-turus (a, um) fui,	I have been about to love.
Ama-turus (a, um) fueram,	I had been about to love.
Ama-turus (a, um) fuero,	I shall have been about to love.

The other is formed by the verb **sum** with the gerundive, as:

Ama-ndus (a, um) sum,	I deserve to be loved.
Ama-ndus (a, um) eram,	I deserved to be loved.
Ama-ndus (a, um) ero,	I shall deserve to be loved.
Ama-ndus (a, um) fui,	I have deserved to be loved.
Ama-ndus (a, um) fueram,	I had deserved to be loved.
Ama-ndus (a, um) fuero,	I shall have deserved to be loved.

CHAPTER XIX.

DEONENT VERBS.

§ 78. **Deponent Verbs**, being in form passive, are conjugated entirely like passive verbs, but in their meaning they are active (either transitive or intransitive). They have, however, all the four participles of a transitive verb: as *hortans*, admonishing; *hortatus*, having admonished; *hortaturus*, about to admonish; and *hortandus*, deserving or needing to be admonished. Those with a stem ending in *a*, *e*, or *i* belong to the first, second, or fourth conjugation; all others follow the third.

The following table shows the principal parts of deponents of all the four conjugations:—

INDICATIVE.

	<i>First.</i>	<i>Second.</i>	<i>Third.</i>	<i>Fourth.</i>
Present,	Hortō-or, I admonish. Hortā-ris (ē), &c. (like am-or).	vērē-or, I fear. vērā-ris (ē), &c. (like mone-or).	ūt-or, I use. ut-ēris, &c. (like audi-or).	parti-or, I distribute. parti-ris, &c. (like audi-or).
Imperfect, Future,	Hortā-bar. Hortā-bor.	vērē-bar. vērē-bor.	ut-ēbar.	parti-ēbar.
Perfect,	Hortā-tus (a, um) sum.	ver-tus (a, um) sum.	ū-sus (a, um) sum.	parti-tus (a, um)
Pluperfect,	Hortā-tus (a, um) eram.	ver-tus (a, um) eram.	ū-sus (a, um) eram.	parti-tus (a, um)
Fut. Perf.,	Hortā-tus (a, um) ero.	ver-tus (a, um) ero.	ū-sus (a, um) ero.	parti-tus (a, um) ero.
SUBJUNCTIVE.				
Present,	Hort-er. Hortā-er.	vērē-ter. vērā-ter.	ut-ar.	parti-ar.
Imperfect, Perfect,	Hortā-tus (a, um) sim.	ver-tus (a, um) sim.	ut-ērer.	parti-er.
Pluperfect,	Hortā-tus (a, um) essem.	ver-tus (a, um) essem.	ū-sus (a, um) sim.	parti-tus (a, um) sim.
				parti-tus (a, um) essem.

	<i>First.</i>	<i>Second.</i>	<i>Third.</i>	<i>Fourth.</i>
Present,	Hortā-re.	Verē-re.	ut-ēre.	parti-re.
Future,	Hortā-tor.	Verē-tor.	ut-itōr.	parti-tor.
	<i>INFINITIVE.</i>			
Present,	Hortā-ri.	Verē-ri.	ut-I.	parti-ri.
Perfect,	Hortā-tum (am, um) esse.	Verē-tum (am, um) esse.	ū-sum (am, um) esse.	parti-tum (am, um) esse.
Future,	Hortā-turum (am, um) esse.	Verē-turum (am, um) esse.	ū-surum (am, um) esse.	parti-turum (am, um) esse.
	<i>SUPINE.</i>			
	Hortā-tum, Hortā-tū.	Verē-tum, Verē-tū.	ū-sum, ū-ū.	parti-tum, parti-tū.
	<i>GERUND.</i>			
	Hortā-nđum, &c.	ver-endum, &c.	ut-endum, &c.	parti-endum, &c.
	<i>PARTICLES.</i>			
Present,	Hortā-na.	ver-ens.	ut-ens.	parti-ens.
Perfect,	Hortā-tus, &.	ver-tus, &.	ū-sus, &.	parti-tus, &.
Future,	Hortā-turus, &.	ver-turus, &.	ū-surus, &.	parti-turus, &.
Gerundive,	Hortā-nđus, &.	ver-endus, &.	ut-endus, &.	parti-endus, &.

CHAPTER XX.

CONTRACTED VERBAL FORMS.

§ 79. In the perfect of the first and second conjugations when ending in *avi* and *evi*, and in the forms derived from it, where the *i* is followed by *s* or *r*, the *v* is frequently thrown out, and the two vowels are contracted into one. In the perfect of the fourth conjugation ending in *ivi* the *v* may always be thrown out; but a contraction of the two vowels takes place only when the *i* is followed by *s*. In the first person of the perfect indicative the *v* is never thrown out, e.g.:—

Perfect, 2nd person singular—*A mavisti, amasti; delevisti, delesti; audivisti, audisti.*

Perfect, 2nd person plural—*A mavistis, amastis; delevistis, delestis; audivistis, audistis.*

Perfect, 3rd person plural—*A mavērunt, amārunt; delevērunt, delērunt; audivērunt, audiērunt.*

Subjunctive, 1st person—*A maverim, amārim; deleverim, delērim; audiverim, audiērim.*

Infinitive—*A mavisse, amasse; delevisse, delesse; audivisse, audiisse or audisse.*

Pluperfect indicative—*A mavēram, amāram; delevēram; delēram; audivēram, audiēram.*

Pluperfect subjunctive—*A mavissem, amassem; delevissem, delessem; audivissem, audissem.*

Note 1.—Instead of the ending *ērunt* in the third person plural of the perfect indicative, we frequently find *ēre*: as *amavēre, delevere, audivēre, scripāre*, for *amavērunt, deleverunt, audiverunt, scripasrunt*; but never *amarunt*.

Note 2.—The imperatives of the verb *dicēre, ducēre, facēre*, and *ferrō*, are *die, duc, fac, fer*. The compounds of *fero* also have *fer*: as *refer, confer*; but those of *dico* and *facio* always have the final *e*: as *edice, effice, caleface*.

CHAPTER XXI.

IRREGULARITIES OF VERBS.

§ 80. Irregularities in conjugation often arise from the fact that a verb in some tenses follows one conjugation

and in others another. For example, *crepo* in the imperfect tenses follows the first conjugation with the stem *crepa* (*crepas*, *crepat*, *crepabam*, *crepabo*, *crepans*, etc.); but in the perfect and supine (*crepui*, *crepitum*), and the tenses derived from them, it follows the second.

Such a change of conjugation is caused by a vowel, such as *e*, *i*, or *u*, being added to the pure stem, or by the stem receiving a strengthening increase in the present: e.g., *augeo*, *auxi*, *auc-tum*, *aug-ere*; *saepio*, *saep-i*, *saep-tum*, *saepire*; *sentio*, *sen-si*, *sen-tum*, *sentire*; *vincio*, *vinci*, *vinc-tum*, *vincire*; *video*, *vid-i*, *vi-sum*, *videre*; *si-n-o*, *si-vi*, *si-tum*, *sin-ere*; *cre-s-co*, *cre-vi*, *cre-tum*, *crescere*.

LISTS OF VERBS FORMING THEIR PERFECTS AND SUPINES IRREGULARLY.

VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 81. I. Most verbs of the first conjugation form their perfect, supine, and infinitive, like *amo*, by adding the suffixes, *vi*, *tum*, and *re* to the stem; but the following form the perfect in *ui*, and the supine in *itum*, as if they belonged to the second conjugation, the final *a* of the stem being thrown out:—

<i>Crēpo</i> (creak, make a noise),	<i>crēpui</i> ,	<i>crēpūtum</i> ,	<i>crēpāre</i> .
<i>Cūbo</i> (lie down),	<i>cūbui</i> ,	<i>cūbūtum</i> ,	<i>cūbāre</i> .
<i>Dōmo</i> (tame),	<i>dōmui</i> ,	<i>dōmūtum</i> ,	<i>dōmāre</i> .
<i>Sōno</i> (sound),	<i>sōnui</i> ,	<i>sōnūtum</i> ,	<i>sōnāre</i> .
<i>Tōno</i> (thunder),	<i>tōnui</i> ,	<i>tōnūtum</i> ,	<i>tōnāre</i> .
<i>Vēto</i> (forbid),	<i>vētui</i> ,	<i>vētūtum</i> ,	<i>vētāre</i> .
<i>Mīco</i> (glitter, dart),	<i>mīcui</i> ,	—	<i>mīcāre</i> .
<i>Fīco</i> (rub),	<i>fīcui</i> ,	<i>fīctum</i> or <i>fīcā-</i> <i>tum</i> ,	<i>fīcāre</i> .
<i>Pīco</i> (fold),	<i>pīcui</i> or <i>pīca-vi</i> ,	<i>pīctum</i> or <i>pīcā-</i> <i>tum</i> ,	<i>pīcāre</i> .
<i>Sēco</i> (cut),	<i>sēcui</i> ,	<i>sectum</i> ,	<i>sēcāre</i> .

NOTE 1.—Compound verbs are generally conjugated like the simple verbs from which they are formed. But there are some exceptions: e.g., *nēeo*, I kill, is conjugated like *amo*; but the compound *enēeo* has in the perfect either *enēcavi* or *enēcui*, and in the supine either *enēcātum* or *enēctum*. The same is the case with some compounds of *crēpo*, as: *discrepo* (I differ), *discrēpui* and *discrēpavi*, *discrepūtum* and *dis-*
crēpatum; *incrēpo* (I chide), *incrēpui* and *incrēpavi*, *incrēpūtum* and *incrēpātum*; and of *plico*, as: *explico*, *explicui* and *explicavi*, *explicā-*
tum and *explicātum*.

NOTE 2.—The compound *ēmīco* (I shine forth) has *ēmīcui*, *ēmīca-*
tum; but *dimīco* (I fight) is conjugated like *amo*. *Sēco* and *sōno*, though their supines are *sectum* and *sōnūtum*, have the future par-
ticiples *secāturus* and *sōnāturus*.

2. The following form their perfect by reduplication:—

<i>Do</i> (I give or put),	<i>dēdi,</i>	<i>dātum,</i>	<i>dāre.</i>
<i>Sto</i> (I stand),	<i>sīsti,</i>	<i>sātum,</i>	<i>sāre.</i>

NOTE.—These two verbs, when compounded with prepositions of two syllables, are conjugated in the same way, as: *circundo* (I surround), *circumdēdi*, *circumdātum*; but *do*, when compounded with prepositions of one syllable, follows the third conjugation, as: *addō* (I add), *addidī*, *additūm*, *addēre*; so also *vendo* (I sell), *vendidī*, *ven-ditūm*, and *credo* (I believe) has *credidī*, *creditūm*, *credēre*; and *sto* makes *sīti*, as: *adsto* (I stand near), *adstīti*, *adstare*; *obsto* (I stand in the way), *obstīti*, *obstītūm*, *obstāre*.

3. The following must be noticed separately:—

<i>Jūvo</i> (I assist),	<i>jūvi,</i>	<i>jūtūm,</i>	<i>jūvāre.</i>
<i>Lāvo</i> (I wash),	<i>lāvi,</i>	<i>lāvātūm</i> , <i>lautūm</i> , or <i>lotūm</i> ,	<i>lāvāre.</i>

NOTE 1.—*Poto* (I drink) has *potōvi*, *potatum*, or *potum*; and *jūvo* has a future participle, *jūvātūs*; or *lāvo* we also have an infinitive *lavāre* of the third conjugation.

NOTE 2.—The verbs *jūro* (I swear), and *caeno* (I sup), have a past participle passive with an active meaning: *jūratūs*, one who has sworn, and *caenatūs*, one who has supped.

CHAPTER XXII.

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 82. 1. Most verbs of the second conjugation drop the final *ē* of the stem before the *ui* (*vi*) of the stem, and in the supine reduce it to *t*, as in *moneo*.

2. A few only retain the final *e* of the stem throughout, as in the two other vowel conjugations. These are:—

<i>Dēleo</i> (destroy),	<i>dēlēvi,</i>	<i>dēlētūm,</i>	<i>dēlēre.</i>
<i>Fleo</i> (weep),	<i>flevi,</i>	<i>fletūm,</i>	<i>flere.</i>
<i>Neo</i> (spin),	<i>nēvi,</i>	<i>nētūm,</i>	<i>nēre.</i>
<i>Compleo</i> (fill up),	<i>complēvi,</i>	<i>complētūm,</i>	<i>complēre.</i>
<i>Vieo</i> (hoop a vessel),	<i>viēvi,</i>	<i>viētūm,</i>	<i>viēre.</i>
<i>Abōleo</i> (abolish),	<i>abōlēvi,</i>	<i>abōlētūm,</i>	<i>abōlēre.</i>
<i>Exōleo</i> (grow old),	<i>exōlēvi,</i>	<i>exōlētūm,</i>	<i>exōlēre.</i>
<i>Oboōleo</i> (fall into disuse),	<i>oboōlēvi,</i>	<i>oboōlētūm,</i>	<i>oboōlēre.</i>

2. The following throw out the final *ē* of the stem both in the perfect and supine:—

<i>Dōceo</i> (teach),	<i>dōcui,</i>	<i>doctum,</i>	<i>docēre.</i>
<i>Tēneo</i> (hold),	<i>tēnus,</i>	<i>tentum,</i>	<i>tēnēre.</i>
<i>Misceo</i> (mix),	<i>mis cui,</i>	<i>mixtum or mistum,</i>	<i>mis cēre.</i>
<i>Torreo</i> (roast),	<i>torrus,</i>	<i>tostum,</i>	<i>torrēre.</i>
<i>Sorbeo</i> (suck up),	<i>sorbus or sorpsi,</i>	—	<i>sorbēre.</i>
<i>Censeo</i> (think),	<i>censi ui,</i>	<i>censem,</i>	<i>censēre.</i>
<i>Recenseo</i> (review),	<i>recensi ui,</i>	<i>recensem or itum,</i>	<i>recensēre.</i>

3. The following form the perfect in *i* and the supine in *sum*, as if they belonged to the third conjugation:—

<i>Prandeo</i> (breakfast),	<i>prandi,</i>	<i>pran sum,</i>	<i>prandēre.</i>
<i>Sēdeo</i> (sit),	<i>sēdi,</i>	<i>ses sum,</i>	<i>sedēre.</i>
<i>Video</i> (see),	<i>vidi,</i>	<i>visum,</i>	<i>vīdēre.</i>
<i>Strideo</i> (creak),	<i>stridi,</i>	—	<i>stridēre.</i>

The following verbs of this conjugation have a reduplicated perfect; but in their compounds the reduplication is dropped:—

<i>Mordeo</i> (bite),	<i>mōmordi,</i>	<i>morsum,</i>	<i>mordēre.</i>
<i>Pendeo</i> (hang),	<i>pēpendi,</i>	<i>pen sum,</i>	<i>pendēre.</i>
<i>Spondeo</i> (promise),	<i>spōpondi,</i>	<i>spon sum,</i>	<i>spondēre.</i>
<i>Tondeo</i> (shear),	<i>tōtondi,</i>	<i>ton sum,</i>	<i>tondēre.</i>

4. The following shorten the perfect and supine by syncope, and thus assume the appearance of verbs with consonantal stems:—

<i>Cār eo</i> (take care),	<i>cāvī,</i>	<i>cautum,</i>	<i>cāvēre.</i>
<i>Fār eo</i> (favour),	<i>fāvī,</i>	<i>fautum,</i>	<i>fāvēre.</i>
<i>Fōr eo</i> (cherish),	<i>fōvī,</i>	<i>fōtum,</i>	<i>fōvēre.</i>
<i>Mōr eo</i> (move),	<i>mōvī,</i>	<i>mōtum,</i>	<i>mōvēre.</i>
<i>Vōr eo</i> (vow),	<i>vōvī,</i>	<i>vōtum,</i>	<i>vōvēre.</i>
<i>Pār eo</i> (fear),	<i>pāvī,</i>	—	<i>pāvēre.</i>
<i>Ferveo</i> (boil),	<i>fervi or fer būi,</i>	—	<i>fervēre.</i>
<i>Conniveo</i> (wink),	<i>connīvi or connīxi,</i>	—	<i>connivēre.</i>

5. The following belong to the second conjugation only in the imperfect tenses; in all others they throw out the final vowel of the stem, and thus become consonantal verbs of the third conjugation:—

<i>Augeo</i> (increase),	<i>auxi,</i>	<i>auctum,</i>	<i>augēre.</i>
<i>Indulgeo</i> (indulge),	<i>indulsi,</i>	<i>indultum,</i>	<i>indulgēre.</i>
<i>Torqueo</i> (twist),	<i>torsi,</i>	<i>tortum,</i>	<i>torquēre.</i>
<i>Ardeo</i> (burn),	<i>arsi,</i>	<i>arsum,</i>	<i>ardēre.</i>
<i>Haereo</i> (stick),	<i>haesi,</i>	<i>haesum,</i>	<i>haerēre.</i>
<i>Jubeo</i> (order),	<i>jussi,</i>	<i>jussum,</i>	<i>jūbēre.</i>
<i>Māneo</i> (remain),	<i>mansi,</i>	<i>mansum,</i>	<i>mānēre.</i>
<i>Mulgeo</i> (stroke),	<i>mulsi,</i>	<i>mulsum,</i>	<i>mulcēre.</i>
<i>Mulgeo</i> (milk),	<i>mulsi,</i>	<i>multum,</i>	<i>mulgēre.</i>

<i>Rideo</i> (laugh),	<i>risi,</i>	<i>rīnum,</i>	<i>ridēre.</i>
<i>Suādeo</i> (advise),	<i>mūsi,</i>	<i>suāsum,</i>	<i>suādēre.</i>
<i>Tergeo</i> (wipe),	<i>tersi,</i>	<i>teroum,</i>	<i>tergēre.</i>
<i>Algeo</i> (am cold),	<i>alsi,</i>	_____	<i>algēre.</i>
<i>Frigeo</i> (am cold),	<i>frixi,</i>	_____	<i>frigēre.</i>
<i>Fulgeo</i> (shine),	<i>fusli,</i>	_____	<i>fulgēre.</i>
<i>Luceo</i> (give light),	<i>luxi,</i>	_____	<i>lucēre.</i>
<i>Lügeo</i> (grieve),	<i>luxi,</i>	_____	<i>lugēre.</i>
<i>Turgeo</i> (swell),	<i>(turni),</i>	_____	<i>turgēre.</i>
<i>Urgeo</i> (urge),	<i>urxi,</i>	_____	<i>urgēre.</i>

6. The following three are semideponents (see § 61):—

<i>Audeo</i> (dare),	<i>ausus sum,</i>	<i>audēre.</i>
<i>Gaudeo</i> (rejoice),	<i>gāvius sum,</i>	<i>gaudēre.</i>
<i>Sōleo</i> (am wont),	<i>sōlitus sum,</i>	<i>sōlēre.</i>

7. The following four deponents must be specially noticed :—

<i>Fāteor</i> (confess),	<i>fassus sum,</i>	<i>fātēri.</i>
<i>Prōfūeor</i> (profess),	<i>prōfessus sum,</i>	<i>prōfūtēri.</i>
<i>Misēreor</i> (pity),	<i>misēritus or misertus sum,</i>	<i>misērēri.</i>
<i>Reor</i> (think),	<i>rātus sum,</i>	<i>rēri.</i>

CHAPTER XXIII.

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 83. The apparent irregularities of verbs of the third conjugation generally arise out of the concurrence of the final consonant of the stem with the initial consonant of the suffix, whereby various changes are caused. Sometimes, also, a verb in some of its tenses follows the second or fourth conjugation, as: *pēto* (3), perfect *pētīvi* (4), *pētītum* (4), *pētēre* (3).

In the following lists the verbs are classified according to the final consonants of their stems.

§ 84. 1. Verbs whose Stems end in b or p.

If the radical vowel of the verb is short, the perfect takes the suffix *i*, but if long, *si*; the supine always ends in *tum*.

<i>Capio</i> (<i>cāp</i>), I take,	<i>cēpi,</i>	<i>captum,</i>	<i>cāpēre.</i>
<i>Rumpo</i> (<i>rūp</i>), I break,	<i>rūpi,</i>	<i>ruptum,</i>	<i>rumpere.</i>
<i>Rēpo</i> (creep),	<i>rep̄si,</i>	<i>reptum,</i>	<i>rēpēre.</i>
<i>Carpo</i> (pluck),	<i>carpsi,</i>	<i>carptum,</i>	<i>carpēre.</i>

<i>Glabo</i> (peel),	<i>glupsi,</i>	<i>gluptum,</i>	<i>glübēre.</i>
<i>Nubo</i> (marry),	<i>nupsi,</i>	<i>nuptum,</i>	<i>nübēre.</i>
<i>Scalpo</i> (scratch),	<i>scalpsi,</i>	<i>sculptum,</i>	<i>scalpēre.</i>
<i>Sculpo</i> (chisel),	<i>sculpsi,</i>	<i>sculptum,</i>	<i>sculpēre</i>
<i>Scribo</i> (write),	<i>scripsi,</i>	<i>scriptum,</i>	<i>scribēre.</i>

NOTE.—Exceptions are: *clēpo* (I steal), *clēpsi*, but also *clēpi*, *cleptum*, *clēpēre*; *lambo* (I lick), *lambi*, *lambitum*, *lambere*. It must be noticed that *b* before *s* and *t* becomes *p*.

§ 85. 2. Verbs whose Stems end in a Guttural, o, g, qu.

They form the supine in *tum*.

1. The perfect takes *i*, when the radical vowel is short:—

<i>Lēgo</i> (read),	<i>lēgi,</i>	<i>lectum,</i>	<i>lēgēre.</i>
---------------------	--------------	----------------	----------------

So also in its compounds, except *dilīgo*, *intelligō*, *negligō*, which make *dilexi*, *intellexi*, *neglexi*.

<i>Ago</i> (act),	<i>ēgi,</i>	<i>actum,</i>	<i>āgēre.</i>
-------------------	-------------	---------------	---------------

So also *circumāgo*; but with other prepositions, *āgo* becomes *īgo*, as: *transīgo*, *transegi*, *transactum*, *translēre*; *cōgo* (*coago*), *coēgi*, *coactum*; *dēgo* (*deago*), *dēgi*.

<i>Jācio</i> , stem <i>jac</i> (throw),	<i>jēci,</i>	<i>jactum,</i>	<i>jācēre.</i>
<i>Fācio</i> , stem <i>fac</i> (make),	<i>fēci,</i>	<i>factum,</i>	<i>fācēre.</i>

With prepositions *facio* becomes *stīcio*, *stēci*, *fectum*; with other words it remains *fācio*, as: *calefācio*, *calefēci*, *calefactum*, *calefācēre*.

<i>Īco</i> or <i>ico</i> (strike),	<i>īci,</i>	<i>ictum,</i>	<i>īcēre.</i>
<i>Fūgio</i> , stem <i>fug</i> (flee),	<i>fūgi,</i>	<i>(fūgiturus),</i>	<i>fūgēre.</i>

In some verbs the present stem is strengthened by the addition of *n*.

<i>Vīno</i> , stem <i>vīc</i> (conquer),	<i>vīci,</i>	<i>victum,</i>	<i>vincēre.</i>
<i>Frāgo</i> , stem <i>frag</i> (break),	<i>frēgi,</i>	<i>fractum,</i>	<i>frangēre.</i>

So also in compounds, *perfrīngō*, *perfrēgi*, *perfractum*, *perfrīngēre*.

<i>Rēlinquo</i> , stem <i>relic</i> (leave behind),	<i>reliqui,</i>	<i>relictum,</i>	<i>relinquēre.</i>
---	-----------------	------------------	--------------------

2. When the radical vowel is long, the perfect takes *si*:—

<i>Dico</i> (say),	<i>dīxi,</i>	<i>dictum,</i>	<i>dicēre.</i>
<i>Dūco</i> (lead),	<i>dūxi,</i>	<i>ductum,</i>	<i>dūcēre.</i>
<i>Sūgo</i> (suck),	<i>sūxi,</i>	<i>suctum,</i>	<i>sūgēre.</i>
<i>Frīgo</i> (roast),	<i>frīxi,</i>	<i>frictum,</i>	<i>frigēre.</i>
<i>Flīgo</i> (beat),	<i>flīxi,</i>	<i>flictum,</i>	<i>fligēre.</i>
<i>Fīgo</i> (fix),	<i>fīxi,</i>	<i>fixum,</i>	<i>figēre.</i>

In some verbs the present stem is strengthened by *n*, which is retained in the perfect, and often also in the supine:—

<i>Fingo</i> , stem <i>fīg</i> (form),	<i>finxi</i> ,	<i>fictum</i> ,	<i>figēre</i> .
<i>Pingo</i> , stem <i>pīg</i> (paint),	<i>pinxi</i> ,	<i>pictum</i> ,	<i>pingēre</i> .
<i>Strigo</i> , stem <i>strīg</i> (draw),	<i>strixi</i> ,	<i>strictum</i> ,	<i>stringēre</i> .
<i>Plango</i> (strike),	<i>plancxi</i> ,	<i>plantum</i> ,	<i>plangēre</i> .
<i>Pango</i> (drive in),	<i>panxi</i> (<i>pēgi</i>),	<i>pandētum</i> ,	<i>pangēre</i> .
<i>Ango</i> (frighten),	<i>anxi</i> ,	—	<i>angēre</i> .
<i>Cingo</i> , gird,	<i>cinxi</i> ,	<i>cinctum</i> ,	<i>cingēre</i> .
<i>Jungo</i> (join),	<i>junxi</i> ,	<i>junction</i> ,	<i>jungēre</i> .
<i>Emungo</i> (blow the nose),	<i>emunxi</i> ,	<i>emunctum</i> ,	<i>emungēre</i> .
<i>Ningo</i> (snow),	<i>ninxi</i> ,	—	<i>nīngēre</i> .
<i>Tingo</i> or <i>tangō</i> (dip),	<i>tinxi</i> ,	<i>tinctum</i> ,	{ <i>tingēre</i> or <i>tinguēre</i> .
<i>Distinguo</i> (distinguish),	<i>distinxī</i> ,	<i>distinctum</i> ,	<i>distinguēre</i> .

So also *extinguo* and *restinguo*.

<i>Ungo</i> or <i>ungno</i> (anoint),	<i>unxi</i> ,	<i>uncium</i> ,	{ <i>ungēre</i> or <i>unguēre</i> .
---------------------------------------	---------------	-----------------	--

Others, in which the present stem is strengthened by a *t*, form the supine in *sum*, as:

<i>Flecto</i> (bend),	<i>flexi</i> ,	<i>flexum</i> ,	<i>flexēre</i> .
<i>Plecto</i> (twist),	(<i>plexi</i>),	(<i>plexum</i>),	<i>plectēre</i> .
<i>Pecto</i> (comb),	<i>pexi</i> ,	<i>pectum</i> ,	<i>pectēre</i> .
<i>Necto</i> (bind),	<i>nexi</i> or <i>nexui</i> ,	<i>nexum</i> ,	<i>nectēre</i> .

When the guttural is preceded by *l* or *r*, the guttural is dropped before *s* and *t*, as:

<i>Mergo</i> (immerse),	<i>mersi</i> ,	<i>mersum</i> ,	<i>mergēre</i> .
<i>Tergo</i> (wipe),	<i>tersi</i> ,	<i>tersum</i> ,	<i>tergēre</i> .

Compounds of *tergo* follow the second conjugation, but form the perfect and supine-like *tergo*.

<i>Spargo</i> (scatter),	<i>sparsi</i> ,	<i>sparsum</i> ,	<i>spargēre</i> .
--------------------------	-----------------	------------------	-------------------

Aspergo has *aspersi*, *aspersum*, and so also other compounds.

NOTE 1.—There are some verbs of this class which make their perfect in *si*, although their radical vowel is short, as:

<i>Rigo</i> (direct),	<i>rexi</i> ,	<i>rectum</i> ,	<i>rēgēre</i> .
-----------------------	---------------	-----------------	-----------------

So also its compounds *dirigo*, *pergo*, and *surgo*; perfect, *direxi*, *per-rexi*, *surrexi*.

<i>Tēgo</i> (cover),	<i>texi</i> ,	<i>tectum</i> ,	<i>tēgēre</i> .
<i>Cōquo</i> (cook),	<i>cōxi</i> ,	<i>cōctum</i> ,	<i>cōquēre</i> .

<i>Allicio</i> (allure),	<i>allexi</i> ,	<i>allustum</i> ,	<i>allicēre</i> .
--------------------------	-----------------	-------------------	-------------------

So also *pellicio*; but *elicio* makes *eliciū*, *elictum*.

<i>Adepicio</i> (look at),	<i>adepxi</i> ,	<i>adspectum</i> ,	<i>addepicēre</i> .
So also the other compounds of <i>spicio</i> , stem <i>spēc</i> .			

NOTE 2.—The following have the reduplication in the perfect:—

<i>Posco</i> (demand),	<i>pōposci,</i>	<u><i>(disciturus),</i></u>	<i>poscōre.</i>
<i>Disco</i> (learn),	<i>dīdici,</i>	<u><i>(disciturus),</i></u>	<i>discōre.</i>
<i>Parco</i> (spare),	<i>pōperci. (<i>parsi</i>),</i>	<i>parsum,</i>	<i>parōre.</i>
<i>Tango</i> (touch),	<i>tētīgi,</i>	<i>tactum,</i>	<i>tangōre.</i>
<i>Pango</i> (make a bargain),	<i>pōpīgi,</i>	<i>pactum,</i>	<i>pangōre.</i>
<i>Pungo</i> (prick),	<i>pūpūgi,</i>	<i>punctum,</i>	<i>pungōre.</i>

But *interpungo* makes *interpunxi*, *interpunctum*.

§ 86. Verbs whose stems end in *h*, and some with a stem ending in *v* (*u*), form the perfect in *si* and the supine in *tum*, the *h* and *v* being hardened into *c* before *s* and *t*:—

<i>Trāho</i> (draw),	<i>traxi (tracsi),</i>	<i>tractum,</i>	<i>trahēre.</i>
<i>Vēho</i> (convey),	<i>vexi (vecsi),</i>	<i>vectum,</i>	<i>vēhēre.</i>
<i>Viro</i> (live),	<i>vixi (vicsi),</i>	<i>victum,</i>	<i>vivēre.</i>
<i>Fluo</i> (flow),	<i>fluci,</i>	<i>fluctum,</i>	<i>fluēre.</i>
<i>Struo</i> (build),	<i>struxi,</i>	<i>structum,</i>	<i>struēre.</i>

§ 87. Verbs whose Stems end in a Dental *d* or *t*.

1. Those which have a short radical vowel, and of which the stem ends in *d*, and all those ending in *nd*, form the perfect in *i* and the supine in *sum*, the *d* being dropped before *s*:—

<i>Edo</i> (eat),	<i>ēdi,</i>	<i>ēsum,</i>	<i>ēdēre.</i>
<i>Fundo</i> (pour),	<i>fūdi,</i>	<i>fūsum,</i>	<i>fundēre.</i>
<i>Mando</i> (chew),	<i>mandi,</i>	<i>mansum,</i>	<i>mandēre.</i>
<i>Scando</i> (mount),	<i>scandi,</i>	<i>scaneum,</i>	<i>scandēre.</i>

So also *ascendo* and *descendo*.

<i>Accendo</i> (set on fire),	<i>accendi,</i>	<i>accensum,</i>	<i>accendēre.</i>
<i>Defendo</i> (defend),	<i>defendi,</i>	<i>defensum,</i>	<i>defendēre.</i>
<i>Prehendo</i> (seize),	<i>prehendi,</i>	<i>prehensum,</i>	<i>prehendēre.</i>
<i>Pando</i> (spread),	<i>pandi,</i>	<i>passum (for <i>pansum</i>),</i>	<i>pandēre.</i>
<i>Fōdio, stem fōd</i> (dig),	<i>fōdi,</i>	<i>fōsum,</i>	<i>fōdēre.</i>

2. Verbs with stems ending in *d* and *t*, with a long radical vowel, form the perfect in *si*, and the supine in *sum*, the *d* being thrown out before *s*:—

<i>Rādo</i> (scrape),	<i>rāsi,</i>	<i>rāsum,</i>	<i>rādēre.</i>
<i>Rōdo</i> (gnaw),	<i>rōsi,</i>	<i>rōsum,</i>	<i>rōdēre.</i>
<i>Vādo</i> (go),	<i>vāsi,</i>	<i>vāsum,</i>	<i>vādēre.</i>

So also *invādo* and *evādo*.

<i>Lūdo</i> (play),	<i>lūsi,</i>	<i>lūsum,</i>	<i>lūdēre.</i>
<i>Trūdo</i> (push),	<i>trūsi,</i>	<i>trūsum,</i>	<i>trūdēre.</i>
<i>Laedo</i> (hurt),	<i>laesi,</i>	<i>laesum,</i>	<i>laedēre.</i>

So also *allūdo*, *illūdo*, and *collido*.

Claudo (close), *clausi*, *clausum*, *claudere*.

So also *includo*, *excludo*, *concludo*, *inclusi*, *incusum*, etc.

Plaudo (applaud), *plausi*, *plausum*, *plaudente*.

So also *explodo*, *explosi*, *explosum*; *complodo* and *supplodo*.

Cedo (give way), *cessi*, *cessum*, *cedere*.
Mitto (send), *misi*, *missum*, *mittere*.

NOTE 1.—The following make the perfect in *si*, though the radical vowel is short:—

Divido (divide), *divisi*, *divisum*, *dividere*.
Quidio (shake), *quassisi*, *quassum*, *quidere*.

The compound *concütio* makes *concussi*, *concussum*, *concutere*.

NOTE 2.—The following make the perfect in *i*, though their radical vowel is long:—

Cido (forge), *cidi*, *cusum*, *cudere*.
Sido (sit down), *sidi*, *sessum*, *sidere*.
Verto (turn), *verti*, *vereum*, *verttere*.
Fido (trust), *fidi*, *fisum*, *fidere*.

3. The following verbs with stems ending in a dental have reduplicated perfects:—

Cädo (fall), *cäcdi*, *cäsum*, *cädere*.

So also the compound *occido* (perish), *occidi*, *occusum*, *occidere*.

Caedo (cut down), *cäcdi*, *caesum*, *caedere*.

So also *occido* (kill), *occidi*, *occisum*.

Tendo (stretch), *tetendi*, *teneum* also *tentum*, *tendere*.

Pendo (hang), *pēpendi*, *peneum*, *pendere*.

Tundo (pound), *tūtudi* or *tūdi*, *tunsum* or *tūsum*, *tundere*.

Findo (split), *fidi*, *fissum*, *findere*.

Scindo (split), *scidi*, *scisum*, *scindere*.

NOTE.—The last two verbs throw off the reduplication, and retain the short radical vowel.

§ 88. Verbs with Stems ending in a Liquid, l, m, n, r.

1. Liquid verbs of the third conjugation generally form the perfect in *i*, and the supine partly in *tum* and partly in *sum*:—

Emo (buy, take), *ēmi*, *emtum*, *ēmōre*.

So also the compounds *coēmo* and *redēmo*. But the contracted

forms *cōmo*, *dēmo*, *sūmo*, *prōmo*, take *s* in the perfect, and generally insert a *p* before *s* and *t*, as:

<i>Cōmo</i> (comb),	<i>compsi</i> ,	<i>comptum</i> ,	<i>com̄re.</i>
<i>Dēmo</i> (take away),	<i>dempsi</i> ,	<i>demptum</i> ,	<i>dem̄re.</i>
<i>Sūmo</i> (take),	<i>sumpsi</i> ,	<i>sumptum (sumtum)</i> ,	<i>sum̄re.</i>
<i>Prōmo</i> (take out),	<i>prompsi</i> ,	<i>promptum (promtum)</i> ,	<i>prom̄re.</i>

The same is the case with the stem *tem*, as *contemno* (*despise*), *contempsi* or *contemsi*, *contemptum* or *contentum*, *contemn̄re*.

<i>Verro</i> (sweep),	<i>verri</i> ,	<i>(versum)</i> ,	<i>verr̄re.</i>
<i>Sallo</i> (salt),	<i>(sallī)</i> ,	<i>salsum</i> ,	<i>sall̄re.</i>
<i>Vello</i> (pull),	<i>velli (vulsi)</i> ,	<i>vulsum</i> ,	<i>vell̄re.</i>

The following have reduplicated perfects:—

<i>Cāno</i> (sing),	<i>cēcñi</i> ,	<i>cantum</i> ,	<i>cān̄re.</i>
<i>Fallo</i> (deceive),	<i>fēfelli</i> ,	<i>falseum</i> ,	<i>fall̄re.</i>
<i>Pello</i> (expel),	<i>pēpūli</i> ,	<i>pulsum</i> ,	<i>pell̄re.</i>
<i>Curro</i> (run),	<i>cēcurri</i> ,	<i>cureum</i> ,	<i>curr̄re.</i>
<i>Pārio</i> (bring forth),	<i>pēpēri</i> ,	<i>partum</i> ,	<i>par̄re.</i>

NOTE 1.—*Compārio* (experience) and *rēperio* (I find) drop the reduplication: *compēri*, *rēperi*, and follow the fourth conjugation. *Percello* (strike down) has *percūli*, *percūlum*.

NOTE 2.—In stems ending in *r* with a long radical vowel, the *r* represents *s*, which reappears in the perfect and supine, as in—

Uro (burn), *ussi*, *ustum*, *ūrēre*; so also *combūro*.

Gēro (carry), *gessi*, *gestum*, *gērēre*, although its vowel is short.

The following must be noted separately:—

<i>Alo</i> (nourish),	<i>alui</i> ,	<i>altum or alltum</i> ,	<i>alēre.</i>
<i>Cōlo</i> (honour),	<i>colui</i> ,	<i>cultum</i> ,	<i>colēre.</i>
<i>Consulo</i> (advise),	<i>consului</i> ,	<i>consultum</i> ,	<i>consult̄re.</i>
<i>Occūlo</i> (conceal),	<i>occului</i> ,	<i>occultum</i> ,	<i>occulēre.</i>
<i>Mōlo</i> (grind),	<i>molui</i> ,	<i>molitum</i> ,	<i>molēre.</i>
<i>Prēmo</i> (press),	<i>pressi</i> ,	<i>pressum</i> ,	<i>prem̄re.</i>

So also the compounds *comprimo*, *exprimo*, etc.; perfect *compressi*, *expressi*; supine *compressum*, *expressum*.

<i>Frēmo</i> (grumble),	<i>fremui</i> ,	<i>fremtum</i> ,	<i>frem̄re.</i>
<i>Gēmo</i> (sigh),	<i>gemui</i> ,	<i>gemtum</i> ,	<i>gem̄re.</i>
<i>Vōmo</i> (spit),	<i>vomui</i> ,	<i>vomitum</i> ,	<i>vom̄re.</i>
<i>Trēmo</i> (tremble),	<i>tremui</i> ,	—	<i>trem̄re.</i>
<i>Gigno</i> (gigēno, produce),	<i>genui</i> ,	<i>genitum</i> ,	<i>gign̄re.</i>
<i>Lēno</i> , stem <i>lī</i> (I smear),	<i>lēvi</i> ,	<i>lītum</i> ,	<i>lin̄re.</i>
<i>Sīno</i> , stem <i>si</i> (allow),	<i>sivi</i> ,	—	<i>sin̄re.</i>
<i>Cerno</i> (see distinctly),	<i>crēvi</i> ,	<i>crētum</i> ,	<i>cern̄re.</i>
<i>Sperno</i> (despise),	<i>sprēvi</i> ,	<i>sprētum</i> ,	<i>spern̄re.</i>
<i>Sterno</i> (throw down),	<i>strāvi</i> ,	<i>strātum</i> ,	<i>stern̄re.</i>
<i>Quaero</i> (seek),	<i>quaestivi</i> ,	<i>quaeritum</i> ,	<i>quaer̄re.</i>
<i>Sēro</i> (sow),	<i>sēvi</i> ,	<i>sātum</i> ,	<i>ser̄re.</i>
<i>Tēro</i> (rub),	<i>trīvi</i> ,	<i>tritum</i> ,	<i>ter̄re.</i>

§ 89. Verbs with Stems ending in s.

Many of these, when the *s* is preceded by a vowel, change the *s* into *r*, but the following retain the *s* :—

<i>Viso</i> (visit),	<i>visi,</i>	—	<i>visere.</i>
<i>Pino</i> (pound),	<i>pinsi, pinsui, pinsitum, pinsum,</i>	<i>pinsere.</i>	
<i>Depso</i> (knead),	<i>deperi, depositum, depsitum,</i>	<i>depserere.</i>	
<i>Texo</i> (weave),	<i>texui, textum,</i>	<i>texere.</i>	
<i>Pono</i> (stem pos, place),	<i>pōsuī, pōsitum,</i>	<i>pōnere.</i>	

§ 90. Verbs with stems ending in *u* (*v*) form their perfect in *i*, and the supine in *tum*, whether the *u* (*v*) is preceded by a vowel or by a consonant; but in the former case the *u* coalesces with the preceding vowel into one long vowel, *ö* or *ü* :—

<i>Acuo</i> (sharpen),	<i>äcui,</i>	<i>äcütum,</i>	<i>äcuere.</i>
<i>Arguo</i> (prove),	<i>argui,</i>	<i>argütum,</i>	<i>arguere.</i>
<i>Delibuo</i> (anoint),	<i>delibui,</i>	<i>delibütum,</i>	<i>delibutre.</i>
<i>Eaxuo</i> (put off),	<i>eaxui,</i>	<i>eaxütum,</i>	<i>eaxtere.</i>
<i>Induo</i> (put on),	<i>indui,</i>	<i>indütum,</i>	<i>induere.</i>
<i>Imbuuo</i> (soak),	<i>imbui,</i>	<i>imbütum,</i>	<i>imbuere.</i>
<i>Minuuo</i> (lessen),	<i>mänuui,</i>	<i>minütum,</i>	<i>minuere.</i>
<i>Stätuuo</i> (set up),	<i>stätui,</i>	<i>stätütum,</i>	<i>statuere.</i>
<i>Suo</i> (sew),	<i>sui,</i>	<i>sütum,</i>	<i>südere.</i>
<i>Trübuo</i> (attribute),	<i>tribui,</i>	<i>tribütum,</i>	<i>tribuere.</i>
<i>Luo, abluo</i> (cleanse),	<i>ablui,</i>	<i>ablütum,</i>	<i>abluere.</i>
<i>Congruuo</i> (agree),	<i>congrui,</i>	—	<i>congruere.</i>
<i>Metuo</i> (fear),	<i>mëtui,</i>	—	<i>mëtuere.</i>
<i>Adnuuo, annuo</i> (assent),	<i>adnui,</i>	—	<i>adnuere.</i>
<i>Spuo</i> (spit),	<i>spui,</i>	—	<i>spuere.</i>
<i>Sternuo</i> (sneeze),	<i>sternui,</i>	—	<i>sternuere.</i>
<i>Pluo</i> (rain),	<i>plui or pluvi,</i>	—	<i>pluere.</i>
<i>Ruo</i> (rush),	<i>rui,</i>	<i>rütum,</i>	<i>ruere.</i>
<i>Lävo</i> (wash),	<i>lävi,</i>	<i>lautum (lötum),</i>	<i>(lavere),</i>
<i>Solvo</i> (loosen),	<i>solvi,</i>	<i>solütum,</i>	<i>comp. § 81, 3. solvare.</i>
<i>Volvo</i> (roll),	<i>volvi,</i>	<i>volütum,</i>	<i>volvare.</i>

§ 91. Verbs ending in the present in *sco* are mostly inchoatives—that is, they denote the beginning of a state or action. Some of them form their perfect tenses according to the second conjugation, and others according to the fourth. When they are derived from verbs they take the perfect and supine from the simple verba, as :

<i>Abölesco</i> (from <i>aboleo</i>),	<i>abölevi,</i>	<i>aböllum,</i>	<i>abölescre.</i>
<i>Coälesco</i> (from <i>älo</i>),	<i>coälui,</i>	<i>coällum,</i>	<i>coälescre.</i>
<i>Obdormisco</i> (from <i>dormio</i>),	<i>obdormivi,</i>	<i>obdormilum,</i>	<i>obdormiscere.</i>
<i>Scisco</i> (from <i>scio</i>),	<i>scivi,</i>	<i>scitum,</i>	<i>scicere.</i>

When they are derived from nouns they form the perfect, if they have one, in *ui*, but have no supine, as :

<i>Coneñesco</i> (from <i>senex</i>),	<i>coneñui</i> ,	—	<i>coneñescere</i> .
<i>Ingrávesco</i> (from <i>gravis</i>),	—	—	<i>ingrávescere</i> .
<i>Juvñesco</i> (from <i>juvenis</i>),	—	—	<i>juvñescere</i> .
<i>Másturesco</i> (from <i>maturus</i>),	<i>mástirui</i> ,	—	<i>másturecere</i> .

The following verbs in *sco* are regarded as simple verbs :—

<i>Cresco</i> (grow),	<i>crévi</i> ,	<i>crétum</i> ,	<i>crescere</i> .
<i>Glieco</i> (swell),	—	—	<i>gliecer</i> .
<i>Hisco</i> (from <i>hiu</i> , gape),	—	—	<i>hicere</i> .
<i>Nosco</i> (come to know),	<i>nōvi</i> ,	<i>nōlum</i> ,	<i>nocere</i> .
<i>Pasco</i> (feed),	<i>pāvi</i> ,	<i>paſtum</i> ,	<i>pascre</i> .
<i>Quiesco</i> (rest),	<i>quiēvi</i> ,	<i>quiētum</i> ,	<i>quiescere</i> .
<i>Suesco</i> (become accustomed),	<i>suēvi</i> :	<i>suētum</i> ,	<i>suescere</i> .

NOTE.—The perfect *nōvi* has the meaning of a present, "I know." In compounds, as *cognosco*, *agnosco*, the supine is *cognitum*, *agnitum*.

CHAPTER XXIV.

VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 92. Most verbs of the fourth conjugation are regular, forming their perfect and supine by adding the suffixes *vi* and *tum* to the stem, as in the case of *audio*; but some form their perfect according to the third or second conjugation, as :

<i>Farcio</i> (cram),	<i>farsi</i> ,	<i>fartum</i> or <i>farcitum</i> ,	<i>farcire</i> .
<i>Fulcio</i> (prop),	<i>fulsi</i> ,	<i>fultum</i> ,	<i>fulcire</i> .
<i>Haurio</i> (pump),	<i>hausi</i> ,	<i>haustum</i> ,	<i>haurire</i> .
<i>Sancio</i> (ratify),	<i>sanxi</i> ,	<i>sancitum</i> or <i>sanctum</i> ,	<i>sancire</i> .
<i>Sarcio</i> (patch),	<i>sarsi</i> ,	<i>sartum</i> ,	<i>sarcire</i> .
<i>Sentio</i> (feel),	<i>sensi</i> ,	<i>sensum</i> ,	<i>sentire</i> .
<i>Saepio</i> (fence in),	<i>saepai</i> ,	<i>saeptum</i> ,	<i>saeptire</i> .
<i>Vincio</i> (bind),	<i>vinxi</i> ,	<i>vincitum</i> ,	<i>vincire</i> .
<i>Sälio</i> (leap),	<i>salui</i> or <i>salii</i> ,	<i>saltum</i> ,	<i>salire</i> .
<i>Sëpëlio</i> (bury),	<i>sëpëli</i> ,	<i>sëpultum</i> ,	<i>sëpélire</i> .
<i>Vénio</i> (come),	<i>vénì</i> ,	<i>venum</i> ,	<i>vénire</i> .
<i>Amlicio</i> (clothe),	<i>ämlicui</i> or <i>ämlicxi</i> ,	<i>ämictum</i> ,	<i>ämictire</i> .
<i>Apérlio</i> (open),	<i>ápérui</i> ,	<i>ápertum</i> ,	<i>ápértere</i> .
<i>Opérlio</i> (cover),	<i>ópérui</i> ,	<i>ópertum</i> ,	<i>ópértere</i> .
<i>Ilo</i> (go),	<i>ívi</i> ,	<i>ítum</i> ,	<i>tre</i> .

NOTE.—The compounds of *salio* change the *a* into *i*, and in the supine into *u*, as : *desilio*, *desilui*, *desultum*; *transsilio*, *transsilui*, *transsultum*.

CHAPTER XXV.

DEPONET VERBS.

§ 93. 1. The deponents of the first conjugation are all conjugated regularly, like *lavor*. But there are some belonging to the second conjugation which deviate from the normal form, as :

Fatior (confess), *fassus sum*, *fatéri*.

The compounds *confatior*, *profatior*, have *confessus* and *professus sum*.

Miséreror (pity), *miseritius or miseritus sum*, *misereréri*.
Reor (think), *ratus sum*, *reri*.

2. The following deponents of the third conjugation form their perfects in an anomalous manner :—

Fruor (enjoy), *fructus or fruitus sum*, fut. part. *fructi*
Fructus or *fruitus*, *fructurus*,

Fungor (perform), *functus sum*, *fungi*.
Gradior (step), *gressus sum*, *gradi*.

Compounds change the *a* into *e*, as *aggredior*, *congredior* ;
aggressus and *congressus sum*.

<i>Lábor</i> (slip),	<i>lapseus sum</i> ,	<i>labi.</i>
<i>Líquor</i> (melt),	<i>(liquefactus sum)</i> ,	<i>liqui.</i>
<i>Lóquor</i> (speak),	<i>locutus sum</i> ,	<i>lóqui.</i>
<i>Mórior</i> (die),	<i>mortuus sum</i> , fut. part. <i>móriturus</i> ,	<i>móri.</i>
<i>Nítor</i> (strain),	<i>nixus or nísus sum</i> ,	<i>niti.</i>
<i>Pátior</i> (suffer),	<i>passus sum</i> ,	<i>páti.</i>
<i>Quéror</i> (complain),	<i>questus sum</i> ,	<i>queri.</i>
<i>Ringor</i> (snarl),	<i>sécutus sum</i> ,	<i>ringi.</i>
<i>Séquor</i> (follow),	<i>úsus sum</i> ,	<i>séqui.</i>
<i>Utor</i> (use),	<i>(réverseus sum)</i> ,	<i>úti.</i>
<i>Révertor</i> (return),	<i>amplectus sum</i> ,	<i>réverti.</i>
<i>Amplexor</i> (embrace),	<i>complexus sum</i> ,	<i>amplecti.</i>
<i>Complector</i> (embrace),	<i>aptus sum</i> ,	<i>complexi.</i>
<i>Apiscor</i> (obtain, stem <i>ap</i>),	<i>ádeptus sum</i> ,	<i>apisci.</i>
<i>Adápischor</i> (obtain, stem <i>ap</i>),	<i>commentus sum</i> ,	<i>adápiseci.</i>
<i>Comminiscor</i> (devise),	<i>—</i>	<i>commínisci.</i>
<i>Rémniscor</i> (remember),	<i>défessus sum</i> ,	<i>rémnisci.</i>
<i>Défétiscor</i> (grow weary),	<i>—</i>	<i>défétisci.</i>

<i>Expergiscor</i> (wake up),	<i>experrectus sum,</i>	<i>expergisci.</i>
<i>Irascor</i> (am angry),	<i>(iratus sum),</i>	<i>irasci.</i>
<i>Nanciscor</i> (obtain),	<i>nactus sum,</i>	<i>nancisci.</i>
<i>Nascor</i> (am born),	<i>natus sum,</i>	<i>nasci.</i>
<i>Obliviscor</i> (forget),	<i>oblitus sum,</i>	<i>oblivisci.</i>
<i>Pāscor</i> (make an agreement),	<i>pactus sum (pepigi),</i>	<i>pāscisci.</i>
<i>Prōfīscor</i> (set out),	<i>profectus sum,</i>	<i>prōfīscisci.</i>
<i>Ulciscor</i> (avenge),	<i>ultus sum,</i>	<i>ulcisci.</i>
<i>Vescor</i> (eat),	—	<i>vesci.</i>

3. There are a few déponents of the fourth conjugation, which form their perfect according to the third conjugation.

<i>Assentior</i> (assent),	<i>assensus sum,</i>	<i>assentiri.</i>
<i>Expērior</i> (try),	<i>expertus sum,</i>	<i>expiriri.</i>
<i>Oppērior</i> (wait for),	<i>opportus or oppēritus sum,</i>	<i>oppērirri.</i>
<i>Mētior</i> (measure),	<i>mensus sum,</i>	<i>mētiri.</i>
<i>Ordior</i> (begin),	<i>orsus sum,</i>	<i>ordiri.</i>
<i>Orior</i> (arise),	<i>ortus sum, fut. part. iple orturus,</i>	<i>ōrtri.</i>

CHAPTER XXVI.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 94. Most of the irregularities of the following verbs arise from euphonic changes, syncope, and contraction, or from the fact that different tenses are formed from different stems, as in the case of *sum* and *fero*.

There are eleven irregular verbs—*sum*, *possum*, *edo*, *fero*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *eo*, *queo*, *nequeo*, and *fio*—and their derivatives.

As to *sum*, see § 72.

§ 95. *Possum* (I am able, or I can) is a compound of *pot* (from *potis*, *pote*, able) and *sum*, the *t* before *s* being assimilated to *s*, but reappearing wherever a tense of *sum* begins with a vowel; in the perfect tenses, the *f* (of *fui*, etc.) is thrown out.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing.	Pot-sim, I am able, I can. Pot-śa, thou art able or canst. Pot-est, he is able or can.	Pot-sim, I am able, or may be able. Pot-śa, Pot-sit.
Plur.	Pot-simūs, we are able. Pot-estis, you are able. Pot-sunt, they are able.	Pot-simūs, Pot-estis. Pot-sint.

Imperfect.

Sing.	Pot-ēram, I was able, or I could. Pot-ēras, thou wast able. Pot-ērit, he was able.	Pot-sam, I was, or should be, able. Pot-śas. Pot-sēt.
Plur.	Pot-ērimūs, we were able. Pot-ēritis, you were able. Pot-ērint, they were able.	Pot-simūs, Pot-estis. Pot-sent.

Future.

Sing.	Pot-ēro, I shall be able. Pot-ēris, thou wilt be able. Pot-ērit, he will be able.	
Plur.	Pot-ērimūs, we shall be able. Pot-ēritis, you will be able. Pot-ērint, they will be able.	None.

Perfect.

Sing.	Pot-uī, I was able, or have been able. Pot-uisti. Pot-uīt.	Pot-nārim, I have been, or may have been able. Pot-uāris. Pot-uārit.
Plur.	Pot-uimūs. Pot-uistis. Pot-uērint, or ēre.	Pot-uārimūs. Pot-uāritis. Pot-uārint.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
Sing. Pöt-uāram, I had been able. Pot-uāris. Pot-uārit.	Pöt-nissem, I might have been able. Pot-nissōe. Pot-nissöt.
Plur. Pot-uāramus. Pot-uāritis. Pot-uārant.	Pöt-nissōmus. Pot-nissōtis. Pot-nissent.
	<i>Future Perfect.</i>
Sing. Pöt-uāro, I shall have been able. Pot-uāris. Pot-uārit.	None.
Plur. Pot-uārimus. Pot-uāritis. Pot-uārint.	

INFINITIVE.
Present, Pos-sē, to be able.
Perfect, Pöt-nisse, to have been able.

PARTICIPLES.
 Pötens is used only as an adjective = "powerful."
 The imperative does not exist.

§ 96. *Edo* (I eat) may be conjugated regularly after the third conjugation, perfect ēdī, supine ēsum, infinitive ēdēre; but several of its forms by syncope become like the corresponding tenses of the verb *sum*. The following are the cases in which this resemblance occurs :—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	<i>Present.</i>
Sing. Ědis or īs, Ědit or est.	Ēdōrem or īssem, ēderes or īses, ēderet or īset.
Plur. Ěditis or īstis.	Ēderēmus or īssōmus, ēderētis or īsetis, ēderent or īsent.
	<i>Imperative.</i>
Sing. Ědē or īs.	Ēdīto or īsto.
Plur. Ědīte or īste.	Ēdīto or īsto, Ěditote or īstote.

INFINITIVE.

Edere or ēsē.

In the passive the syncope takes place in *čdūtur*, *čstur*, and *čderetur*, *čsētur*.

The same syncope occurs in the compounds of *edo*, as: *comedo*, *comēdis* = *comēs*, *comedit* = *comēst*, *comedēre* = *comēsse*, etc.

§ 97. The verb *fēro* (I bring or bear) takes its perfect *tūli* and its supine *lātum* from *tollo*. The imperfect tenses often omit the connecting vowel between the stem and the termination.

Active Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. Fēr-o, fēr-a, fēr-t, I bear, etc.	Fēr-am, fēr-ās, fēr-āt.
--	-------------------------

Plur. Fēr-īmūs, fēr-ītīs, fēr-īnt.	Fēr-īmūs, fēr-ātīs, fēr-ānt.
------------------------------------	------------------------------

Imperfect.

Sing. Fēr-ēbam, fēr-ēbas, fēr- ēbat.	Fēr-ērem, fēr-ēs, fēr-ēt.
---	---------------------------

Plur. Fēr-ēbūmūs, fēr-ēbātīs, fēr-ēbānt.	Fēr-ēbūmūs, fēr-ētīs, fēr-ēnt.
---	--------------------------------

Future.

Sing. Fēr-am, fēr-ēs, fēr-ēt.	None.
-------------------------------	-------

Plur. Fēr-ēmūs, fēr-ētīs, fēr-ēnt.	
------------------------------------	--

Perfect.

Sing. Tūl-i, tūl-istī, tūl-īt.	Tūl-ērim, tūl-ēris, tūl-ērit.
--------------------------------	-------------------------------

Plur. Tūl-īmūs, tūl-istīs, tūl- ērunt or ērē.	Tūl-ērimūs, tūl-ēritīs, tūl-ērint.
--	------------------------------------

Pluperfect.

Sing. Tūl-ēram, ērās, ērāt.	Tūl-ēssem, issēs, issēt.
-----------------------------	--------------------------

Plur. Tūl-ērimūs, ērātīs, ērant.	Tūl-ēssemūs, issētīs, issent.
----------------------------------	-------------------------------

Future Perfect.

Sing. Tūl-ēro, ēris, ērit.	None.
----------------------------	-------

Plur. Tūl-ērimūs, ēritīs, ērint.	
----------------------------------	--

	IMPERATIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Future.</i>
Sing. Fér.	Fér-to. Fér-to.	
Plur. Fér-tō.		Fér-tōte. Fér-unto.

INFINITIVE.

Present, Fér-rū.
Perfect, Tíll-issō.
Future, Lá-tárum (am, um) esse.

GERUND.

Fér-endī, fér-endo, fér-endum.

SUPINE.

Lá-tum and Lá-tū.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, Fér-ens. *Future*, Lá-tírus, a, um.

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	
Sing. Fér-or, fer-ris, fer-tur, I am borne, etc.	Fér-ar, áris, átur.
Plur. Fér-imur, fer-imini, fer-untur.	Fér-ámur, ámīnī, antur.

Imperfect.

Sing. Fér-ébar, ébáris (or bárë), ébátur.	Fér-rér, fer-réris (or rérë), fer-rétur.
Plur. Fér-ébámur, ébáminī, fer-ébantur.	Fér-rémur, fer-réminī, fer-rentur.

Future.

Sing. Fér-ar, éris, étur.	None.
Plur. Fér-émur, éminī, entur.	

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. Lā-tus (a, um) sum, es, est.	Lā-tus (a, um) sim, sis, sit.
Plur. Lā-ti (ae, a) sumus, estis, sunt.	Lā-ti (ae, a) simus, sitis, sint.

Pluperfect.

Sing. Lā-tus (a, um) eram, eras, erat.	Lā-tus (a, um) essem, etc.
Plur. Lā-ti (ae, a) eramus, etc. eratis, erant.	Lā-ti (ae, a) essemus, etc.

Future Perfect.

Sing. Lā-tus (a, um) ero, etc.	None.
Plur. Lā-ti (ae, a) erimus, etc.	

IMPERATIVE.

Present,

Sing. Fer-rō.	Fer-tor. Fer-tor.
Plur. Fer-imini.	Fer-untor.

Future.

INFINITIVE.

Present, Fer-ri.
Perfect, Lā-tum (am, um) esse.
Future, Lā-tum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, Lā-tus, a, um.
Gerundive, Fer-endus, a, um.

NOTE.—All the compounds of *fero* are conjugated like the simple verb, as: *afero* (from *ad* and *fero*), *attuli*, *adlatum*, or *allatum*; *aufero* (from *ab* and *fero*), *abstuli*, *ablatum*, *auferre*; *offerō* (from *ob* and *fero*), *obtuli*, *oblatum*; *suffero* (from *sub* and *fero*, *sustuli*, *sublatum* (used as the perfect and supine of the verb *tollo*); *difero* (from *dis* and *fero*), *distuli*, *dilatum*; *defero*, *detuli*, *delatum*; *circumferō*, *circumtuli*, *circumlatum*; *transferō*, *transtuli*, *translatum*.

§ 98. *Vōlo* (I will) is a simple verb, but *nōlo* (I will not) is compounded of *ne* and *vōlo*; and *mālo* (I will rather) of *magis* or *māge* and *vōlo*. They are irregular only in the imperfect tenses.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

Sing.	Völo, I will.	Nöle-o, I will not.	Mäl-o, I will rather.
	Vla.	Non vis.	Mävis.
	Vul-t.	Non vul-t.	Mävul-t.
Plur.	Völ-timus.	Nölt-timus.	Mäl-timus.
	Vul-tis.	Non vul-tis.	Mävul-tis.
	Völ-unt.	Nölt-unt.	Mäl-unt.

Imperfect.

Völ-ëbam, bas, etc.	Nölt-ëbam, bas, etc.	Mäl-ëbam, bas, etc.
---------------------	----------------------	---------------------

Future.

Völ-am, es, et, etc.	Nölt-am, es, et, etc.	Mäl-am, es, et, etc.
----------------------	-----------------------	----------------------

Perfect.

Völ-ni, uisti, etc.	Nölt-ni, uisti, etc.	Mäl-ni, uisti, etc.
---------------------	----------------------	---------------------

Pluperfect.

Völ-nëram, uëras, etc.	Nölt-nëram, uëras, etc.	Mäl-nëram, uëras, etc.
---------------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------

Future Perfect.

Völ-uëro, uëris, etc.	Nölt-uëro, uëris, etc.	Mäl-uëro, uëris, etc.
-----------------------	------------------------	-----------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing.	Völ-im.	Nölt-im.	Mäl-im.
	Völ-is.	Nölt-is.	Mäl-is.
	Völ-it.	Nölt-it.	Mäl-it.

Plur.	Völ-imus.	Nölt-imus.	Mäl-imus.
	Völ-itis.	Nölt-itis.	Mäl-itis.
	Völ-int.	Nölt-int.	Mäl-int.

Imperfect.

Völ-lem, es, et, etc.	Nölt-lem, es, et, etc.	Mäl-lem, es, et, etc.
-----------------------	------------------------	-----------------------

Perfect.

Völ-uërim, uëris, etc.	Nölt-uërim, uëris, etc.	Mäl-uërim, uëris, etc.
------------------------	-------------------------	------------------------

Pluperfect.

Völ-nisssem, nisses, etc.	Nölt-nisssem, nisses, etc.	Mäl-nisssem, nisses, etc.
------------------------------	-------------------------------	------------------------------

IMPERATIVE.

Present, —

Nölt-i, nöltitö.

—

Future.

Sing. **M**al-**lo.**
Mal-**la.**

Plur. **M**al-**loga.**
Mal-**lata.**

INFINITIVE.

Present, **V**ol-**M.**
Perfect, **V**ol-**misce.**

Mal-**M.**
Mal-**misce.**

Mal-**M.**
Mal-**misce.**

PARTICIPLES.

Present, **V**ol-**ens.**

Mal-**ens.**

§ 99. The verb *eo* (I go) belongs to the fourth conjugation, and is almost regular. Its stem consists of a simple *i*, which before *a*, *o*, and *u* is changed into *e*.

INDICATIVE.

Sing. **E**-**o**, **I**-**a**, **I**-**t.**

Plur. **I**-**mus**, **I**-**tis**, **e**-**unt.**

SUBJUNCTIVE.*Present.*

E-**am**, **e**-**is**, **e**-**at.**

E-**imus**, **e**-**titis**, **e**-**ant.**

Imperfect.

Sing. **I**-**bam**, **I**-**bäs**, **I**-**bät**, etc. | **I**-**rem**, **I**-**rëa**, **I**-**rët**, etc.

Future.

Sing. **I**-**bo**, **I**-**bis**, **I**-**bit**, etc. | None.

Perfect.

Sing. **I**-**ví**, **I**-**vistí**, **I**-**vít**, etc. | **I**-**vërim**, **I**-**vëris**, **I**-**vërit**, etc.

Pluperfect.

Sing. **I**-**vëram**, **I**-**vëräs**, **I**-**vërät**, | **I**-**vissem**, **I**-**vissës**, **I**-**vissët**, etc.

Future Perfect.

Sing. **I**-**vero**, **I**-**vëris**, **I**-**vërit**, | None.
etc.

IMPERATIVE.*Present.*

Sing. **I**.

Future.

I-**to.**

I-**to.**

Plur. **I**-**te.**

I-**töte.**

E-**unto.**

INFINITIVE.

Present, Irō.*Perfect*, I-visse.*Future*, I-tūrum (am, um) esse.

GERUND.

E-undi, e-undo, e-undum.

SUPINE.

I-tūm, I-tū.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, I-ens, genitive, e-untis.*Future*, I-tūrus, a, um.

NOTE.—The compounds of *eo* generally throw out the *v* in the perfect tenses, as: *abeo*, perfect *abit*, *abiisti*, or *abisti*; *redeo*, perfect *redit*, *rediti*, or *redisti*, *redieram*, *rediissim*, or *rediissim*, etc.

Two compounds deserve special notice—*vēneo* (I am sold), and *ambio* (I go round or about). The former, which has a passive meaning, is composed of *vēnum* and *eo*, and is used as the passive of *vendo* (*vēnum do*), I sell. *Ambio* is conjugated regularly according to the fourth conjugation—as *ambiant*, *ambiam*, *ambiēbam* (also *ambibam*), *ambient* (also *ambibunt*), *ambiendum*, *ambiens*, genitive *ambientis*.

§ 100. The verbs *queo* (I can) and *nēqueo* (I cannot) are both conjugated like *eo*—perfect *quīvi* and *nēquīvi*, supine *quītum* and *nēquītum*, infinitive *quīre* and *nēquīre*; but neither of them has an imperative, a gerund, or a future participle.

§ 101. *Fīo* (I become, or am made) belongs to the fourth conjugation, and presents few irregularities, except that its perfect tenses are taken from *facio*, to which it supplies the place of a passive. Its stem is *fī*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. FI-o, FI-s, FI-t.

FI-am, FI-ās, FI-āt.

Plur. (FI-mus), (FI-tis), FI-unt.

FI-āmus, FI-ātis, FI-ant.

Pluperfect.

Sing. FI-ēbam, FI-ēbās, FI-ēbat.

FI-ērem, FI-ēres, FI-ēret.

Plur. FI-ēbāmus, FI-ēbātis, FI-ēbant.

FI-ērēmus, FI-ērētis, FI-ērent.

INDICATIVE.	Future.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Sing. FI-am, FI-ēs, FI-et.		
Plur. FI-ēmus, FI-ētis, FI-ent.		None.
	<i>Perfect.</i>	
Fac-tus (a, um) sum, es, etc.		| Fac-tus (a, um) sim, sis, etc.
	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
Fac-tus (a, um) eram, eras, etc.		| Factus (a, um) essem, esses, etc.
	<i>Future Perfect.</i>	
Fac-tus (a, um) ero, eris, etc.		| None.
Present.	IMPERATIVE.	Future.
Sing. FI.		
Plur. FI-tē.		| None.
	<i>INFINITIVE.</i>	
Present, FI-ēri.		
Perfect, Fac-tum (am, um) esse.		
Future, Fac-tum iri.		
	<i>PARTICIPLES.</i>	
Present, None.		
Perfect, Fac-tus, a, um.		
Gerundive, Fac-i-endus.		

§ 102. Defective verbs are those of which only certain forms occur. Such verbs are *coepī*, *měmīnī*, *ōdī*, *āio*, *inquam*, *fārī*, *cēdo*, *quaeso*; and the imperatives, *āvē*, *āpdgē*, *salvē*, *vālē*, and *ōvāre*.

§ 103. The verbs, *coepī* (I begin), *měmīnī* (I remember), *ōdī* (I hate), are in reality perfects, the presents of which are not in use. They have the meaning of a present; hence the pluperfect has the meaning of an imperfect, and the future perfect that of a simple future. They occur only in the perfect tenses, and their conjugation is quite regular. (About *novi*, from *nosco*, see § 91.)

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.

Coep-I.	Mömin-I.	Od-I.
Coep-istL.	Mömin-istL.	Od-istL.
Coep-it, etc.	Mömin-it, etc.	Od-it, etc.

Pluperfect.

Coep-ëram,	Mömin-ëram,	Od-ëram.
------------	-------------	----------

Future Perfect.

Coep-ëro.	Mömin-ëro.	Od-ëro.
-----------	------------	---------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Coep-ërim.	Mömin-ërim.	Od-ërim.
------------	-------------	----------

Pluperfect.

Coep-issem.	Mömin-issem.	Od-issem.
-------------	--------------	-----------

IMPERATIVE.

Future.

Sing. ——	Mömen-to.	——
----------	-----------	----

Plur. ——	Mömen-tötä.	——
----------	-------------	----

INFINITIVE.

Coep-isse.	Mömin-isse.	Od-isse.
------------	-------------	----------

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.

Coep-tus.	—	O-sus (hating).
-----------	---	-----------------

Future.

Coep-turus.	—	O-surus.
-------------	---	----------

NOTE.—*Coepi* has also a passive form, *coepitus* (*a, um*) *sum*, which is used only in connection with other passive verbs—*domus aedificari coepita est* (the building of the house has been commenced).

§ 104. Of *äio* (I say, I say yes, or I affirm), only the following forms occur:—

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Sing. Äio,	äis,	äit.	—	äis,	äit.
Plur. ——	—	aiunt.	—	—	äiant.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
Present.	Imperfect.	
Sing. <i>Inquit</i> , <i>inquit</i> , <i>inquit</i> .	;	—
Plur. <i>Inquirit</i> , <i>inquit</i> , <i>inquit</i> .	—	—
Perfect.		Future.
—	<i>inquit</i> ,	<i>inquit</i> ,
	<i>inquit</i> .	—
	|	<i>inquit</i> ,
		<i>inquit</i> .

INDICATIVE.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Inquit*, *inquit*, *inquit*. ; — — *inquit*
and *inquietat*.

Plur. *Inquirit*, *inquit*, *inquit*. — — —

Perfect.

inquit,

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

Inquit.

Future.

Inquit,*inquit*.

§ 106. The verb *fari* (to speak), stem *fa*, is very defective; but some of its compounds—as *afari*, *effari*, *prafari*, and *profari*—have a few more forms, which are placed in brackets:—

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
Present.		
Sing. —	<i>faris</i> , <i>fitar</i> .	Present.
		| None.
Plur. [Famur, famini]	—	|
		[Farer, etc.].
[Fabor],		
Fabor [faboris], <i>fabitur</i> .		Future.
		| None.
Fatus [a, um] sum, etc.		Perfect.
		| Fatus [a, um] sim, etc.
Fatus [a, um] eram, etc.		Pluperfect.
		| Fatus [a, um] essem, etc.
IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.
Present, <i>Fari</i> .		Present, <i>Fari</i> .
		SUPINE.
		<i>Fati</i> .

PARTICIPLES.

Present, Fanti^s, fanti, fantem, fante (compare infans).

Perfect, Fitus, a, um.

Gerundive, Fandus, a, um.

GERUND.

Fandi, fando.

§ 107. *Cedo* is used only as an imperative in the sense of "give" or "tell," as: *cedo librum*, "give up the book;" *cedo quid faciam*, "tell me what I am to do."

Quaeso (I pray) and *quaesumus* (we pray) are only different forms of *quaero* and *quaerimus*. Both *quaeso* and *quaesumus* are, like the English "pray," inserted in a sentence, as: *dic, quaeso, unde venias*, "tell me, pray, whence you come."

§ 108. The imperatives, *avē*, *apāgē*, *salvē*, *vālē*, are from the verbs *aveo* (I desire), the Greek *άραγε* (Lat. *abigo*), *salveo* (I am safe), and *valeo* (I am well or strong).

Avē (or *hāvē*), plural *avēte*, and the future imperative *avēto*, signify "hail," "be greeted," or "good-day," "I am glad to see you."

Apāgē is used in the sense of "begone," or "be off."

Salvē, plural *salvēte*, and future *salvēto*, are used in the sense of "hail," or "be welcome."

Vālē or *vālēte* signify "farewell."

Of *ōvāre* (to rejoice, or celebrate an ovation), there occur only *ōvas*, *ōvat*, *ōvāret*, *ōvandi*, *ōvātūrus*, *ōvātus*, and *ōvans*.

CHAPTER XXVII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 109. Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular, and can have neither a substantive nor a substantive pronoun for their subject. They state only in a general way that something happens, as: *pluit*, it rains; *licet*, it is permitted; *ōportet*, it is necessary.

Some impersonal verbs describe the various states of the weather, as:

<i>Pluit</i> , it rains.	<i>Fulgitat</i> and <i>fulminat</i> , it lightens.
<i>Ningit</i> , it snows.	<i>Tōnat</i> , it thunders.
<i>Grandinat</i> , it hails.	<i>Vesperascit</i> and <i>advesperascit</i> , it grows dark.
<i>Lapidat</i> or <i>lapidatum est</i> , stones fall from heaven.	
<i>Lūcescit</i> and <i>illūcescit</i> , it dawns.	

Others describe certain states of the mind, and require the person in whom the state of mind exists in the accusative:

Mis̄eret (*me*), I pity, perfect *miseritum est*, *miseratum est*, or *miseruit*.

Piget (*me*), I regret, perfect *piguit* or *pigitum est*.

Poenitet (*me*), I repent, perfect *poenituit*.

Pudet (*me*), I am ashamed, perfect *puduit* or *puditum est*.

Taeder (*me*), I am disgusted, perfect *taetaeum est* or *taeduit*.

Oportet (*me*), it is necessary for me, I must, perfect *oportuit*.

§ 110. The following can have no personal subject, but may have the name of a thing in its place, and are also used in the third person plural with a neuter plural for their subject:

Decet (*me*), it becomes me, perfect *décuit*.

Dēdecet (*me*), it does not become me, *dēdecuit*.

Libet or *libet* (*mihi*), I like, choose, perfect *libuit* or *libitum est*.

Licet (*mihi*), I am permitted, perfect *licuit* or *licitum est*.

Līquet, it is obvious, perfect *līquit*.

NOTE.—We may accordingly say, *hic color eum decet*, “this colour is becoming to him;” *parva parvum decent*, “small things become a small man;” *multa or omnia licent*, “many or all things are permitted.”

§ 111. Some verbs, assuming in the third person singular a meaning different from that which they have in the other persons, are impersonal only in a peculiar sense. The most common among them are:

<i>Interest</i> and <i>rēfert</i> , it is of importance to.	<i>Condūcit</i> , it is conducive.
<i>Accidit</i> , <i>ēvenit</i> , <i>contingit</i> , or <i>fit</i> , it happens.	<i>Convénit</i> , it suits. [lished.
<i>Accidit</i> , it is added to, or in addition.	<i>Constat</i> , it is known, or estab-
<i>Attinet</i> and <i>pertinet</i> (<i>ad</i>), it concerns or pertains to.	<i>Expedit</i> , it is expedient.
	<i>Delectat</i> and <i>jūrat</i> (<i>me</i>), it de-
	lights me.
	<i>Fullit</i> , <i>fūgit</i> , and <i>præterit</i> (<i>me</i>),
	it escapes me.

<i>Placet</i> , it pleases, perfect <i>placuit</i>	<i>Vacat</i> , it is wanting. or <i>placitum est</i> .
<i>Praestat</i> , it is better.	<i>Est</i> , in the sense of <i>Uacet</i> , it is permitted or possible—as <i>est videre</i> .
<i>Restat</i> , it remains.	

§ 112. Intransitive verbs have only an impersonal passive, indicating generally that an action takes place, without attributing it to any definite person, as: *curritur*, “running is going on,” or “people run;” *vivitur*, “people live;” *ventum est*, “people came,” or “have come;” *dormitur*, “sleeping is going on,” or “people sleep.” So also *ventum est*, “they came;” *pugnandum est*, “it is necessary to fight;” *veniendum est*, “it is necessary to come.”

CHAPTER XXVIII.

ADVERBS.

§ 113. Adverbs, expressing the relations of time, place, manner, degree, etc., qualify the ideas expressed by adjectives, verbs, and other adverbs. In regard to their form, they may be divided into three classes:—

1. *Primitive Adverbs*, as: *nunc*, now; *jam*, already; *saepe*, often; *satis*, enough; to which may be added most prepositions which are originally adverbs, as: *ante*, before, or earlier; *post*, after, or later.

2. *Adverbs formed from adjectives* by the terminations *ē*, *ō*, and *ter*, answering to the English *ly*, as: *male*, badly; *raro*, rarely; *sapienter*, wisely.

(a.) Adjectives ending in *us* and *er* belonging to the second declension, including all superlatives, form adverbs by the termination *ē*, as: *altus* (high), *altē*; *pulcher* (beautiful), *pulchrē*; *miser* (wretched), *miserē*; *optimus* (best), *optime*.

(b.) Adjectives of the third declension form adverbs by adding *ter* to their stem, and where the stem itself ends in *t*, this *t* is dropped, as: *sapiens* (stem *sapien*), *sapienter*; *fortis* (stem *forti*), *fortiter*; *ferox* (stem *feroci*), *ferociter*.

(c.) The neuter gender of the comparative is also used as an adverb, as: *altius*, higher or more highly; *pulchrius*, more beautiful or more beautifully; *fortius*, braver or more bravely. So also some adjectives in *is* employ the neuter as an adverb, as: *facile*, easily; *difficile*, with difficulty.

(d.) Adjectives which form their degrees of comparison irregularly are also irregular in the formation of their adverbs, as:

ADVERBS.

<i>Bonus</i> (good),	<i>bōnē,</i>	<i>melius,</i>	<i>optime.</i>
<i>Malus</i> (bad),	<i>mālē,</i>	<i>pēius,</i>	<i>pessime.</i>
<i>Multus</i> (much),	<i>multum,</i>	<i>plus,</i>	<i>plurimum.</i>
<i>Magnus</i> (great),	<i>magnōpōrē,</i>	<i>māgis,</i>	<i>maxime.</i>
<i>Parvus</i> (little),	<i>(parum),</i>	<i>minus,</i>	<i>mīnime and minimum.</i>

(e.) Adverbs formed from adjectives have, of course, their degrees of comparison; but besides them the following also are compared:—

<i>Diū</i> (long),	<i>diūtius,</i>	<i>diūtissime.</i>
<i>Satis</i> (enough),	<i>satis,</i>	<i>—</i>
<i>Nūper</i> (lately),	<i>—</i>	<i>nūperrime.</i>
<i>Saepe</i> (often),	<i>saepius,</i>	<i>saepissime.</i>
<i>Sēcūs</i> (otherwise),	<i>sēcūs,</i>	<i>—</i>

3. Some adverbs are in reality cases (ablative and accusative or dative) of nouns, as: *gratias* (for thanks, that is, for nothing, gratis); *diū* (long), an old ablative of *dies*; *noctu* (by night), from an obsolete *noctus=nox*; *continuo*, continuously; *subito*, suddenly; *hic*, here; *hinc*, hence; *huc*, hither; *ibi* (here), from *is*, *ea*, *id*; *ubi* (where), for *cubi*, from *qui* or *quis*; *alibi*, from *alis*, elsewhere.

NOTE 1.—Most adverbs are in reality ablatives of the neuter gender, like *continuo*. Some have two forms with different meanings, as: *primo*, at first, but *primum*, for the first time; *certe*, at all events, *certo*, certainly; *vere*, truly, *vero*, in truth; *summum*, in the highest degree, *sumnum*, at most.

NOTE 2.—The accusative is often used adverbially. This is always the case—

(a.) In the neuter of the comparative. See above, No. 2, (e.)

(b.) In the positive of adjectives expressing number or measure, as: *multum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *paullum*, *ceterum*, *solum*, *plorunquo*, *plurimum*, *potissimum*; *facilē*, *impurē*, *sublimē*.

(c.) Feminine accusatives: *bifariam*, in two parts; *perperam*, wrongly; *palam*, openly; *alida*, at another time; *foras*, abroad.

(d.) Several adverbs ending in *im*, *tim*, and *sim*, must likewise be regarded as old forms of the accusative, as: *partim*, partly; *furtim*, stealthily; *raptim*, hurriedly; *nominatim*, by name; *privatim*, privately; *paullatim*, gradually; *confestim*, immediately; *viritim*, man for man; *cursim*, in a running manner; *passim*, in all directions; *sensim*, slowly.

NOTE 3.—There are also several adverbs ending in *us*, as: *cominus*, near at hand; *eminus*, at a distance; others in *itus*, as: *caelitus*, from heaven; *divinitus*, from the gods; *funditus*, from the ground, utterly; *radicitus*, from the root; *penitus*, thoroughly. Some, lastly, are compound words, as: *magnopere*, greatly; *quotidie* or *cotidie*, daily; *quotannis*, every year; *quoadmodum*, in what manner; *forsitan*, perhaps; *scilicet*, to wit or namely; *nimirum*, no wonder, without doubt.

CHAPTER XXIX.

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 114. Prepositions are originally adverbs, and many are still often used as such. They all express originally local relations—that is, they express either rest in a place, or motion to a place, or motion from a place. But in a more extended sense they also express relations of cause and time. All these relations are expressed in Latin by two cases, the accusative and the ablative, and hence only these two cases are governed by prepositions.

§ 115. The following prepositions always govern the accusative:—

Ad, to or near.

Adversus or *adversum*, opposite,
against.

Ante, before.

Apud, by or near.

Circa or *circum*, around.

Circiter, about.

Cis or *citra*, on this side of.

Contrā, against.

Ergā, towards.

Extrā, outside of.

Infrā, below.

Inter, between, among.

Intrā, within.

Juxta, close by.

Ob, on account of.

Ptēs, in the power of.

Per, through.

Pōnē, behind.

Post, after.

Praeter, besides.

Prōpē, near.

Propter, on account of.

Secundum, according to.

Suprā, above.

Trans, across.

Ultrā, on the other side of.

Versus or *versum*, towards.

NOTE 1.—The final consonant of a preposition, when compounded with other words, frequently undergoes changes for the sake of euphony. The most common change consists in the assimilation of the final consonant to the initial consonant of the following word: *alloquor* for *adloquor*, *attribuo* for *adtribuo*, *affigo* for *adfigo*, *annuo* for *adnuo*. *Inter* and *per* undergo this assimilation only in *intelligo* and *pellicio* and their derivatives. *Ob* assimilates its *b* only to *c*, *f*, *g*, and *p*, as: *occurro*, *offerō*, *oggēro*, *oppono*. *Trans* is frequently shortened into *tra*, as: *trajicio*, *traduco*.

NOTE 2.—Prepositions generally stand before the case they govern, but *versus* is always placed after its accusative: as: *portam versus*, towards the gate: *Brundisium versus*, towards Brundisium.

§ 116. The following prepositions always govern the ablative :—

A, *ab*, or *abs*, from, by.
*Ab*que, without.
Cōm, in the presence of.
Cum, with :
Dē, down from, about.
E or *ex*, out of.

P̄s, before, because of.
P̄v, before, in front, or in defense of.
Sūb, without.
Tēns, as far as.

NOTE 1.—*Ab* is used before vowels and *A*; before consonants we find both *a* and *ab*. *Ab* occurs rarely except in the expression *ab te*. In composition *ab* is sometimes changed into *au* (*av*), as: *aufero*, *aufragio*. *Ab* is used in composition before *c* and *t*, as: *abcondo*, *abstineo*.

NOTE 2.—*Cum*, when joined to personal pronouns, is put after the pronoun with which it coalesces into one word, as: *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *modicūm*, *vobiscum*. The same is very often the case with relative pronouns, as: *quacum*, *quicum*, *quibuscum*. In composition *cum* is often changed into *com*, as: *compono*, *committo*. Before *l*, *n*, and *r* the *m* assimilates itself to them, as: *colligo*, *conniveo*, *corrigo*. Before other consonants the *m* is changed into *s*, as: *conjungs*, *confere*, *contulī*; and before vowels it is dropped, as: *secutus*, *cōo*, *coitus*; so also in *cohaereo*.

NOTE 3.—*Ex* is used before vowels and *A*; before consonants we find both *ex* and *e*. *Tēns* is always put after its ablative, as: *mento tēnus*, up to the chin.

§ 117. The following prepositions govern the ablative when they express being or rest in a place, and the accusative when they express motion towards a place :—

In, in, into, or against.
Sub, under.

Clam, without the knowledge of.

Super, over.
Subter, under.

NOTE 1.—*In* changes its *n* into *m* before *b*, *p*, and *m*, as: *imbuo*, *impedio*, *immineo*; before *l* and *r* it is assimilated, as: *illudo*, *irrideo*; before other consonants it remains unchanged.

NOTE 2.—*Sub* in composition assimilates its *b* to *c*, *f*, *g*, *m*, and *p*, as: *succumbo*, *suffectus*, *suggero*, *summovo*, *suppono*, also in *surripio*. *Super* and *subter* usually take the accusative, even when they express rest, or being over or under a thing.

§ 118. The prepositions (or adverbs), *amb* (around), *dis* or *di* (in different directions), *rē* or *rēd* (back), and *sē* or *sēd* (aside), are never used by themselves, but occur only in composition.

NOTE.—*Amb* (compare *ambo*), on both sides, around, drops the *b* before *p*, as: *amplector*, *amputo*; before gutturals and *f* it becomes *n*,

as: *envelope* (two-headed, doubtful), *enquire* (I search all around), *enfretus* (a bending round).

Dis before *f* assimilates its *s* to it, as: *difido*, *diffendo*.

The original form of *re* is *red*, and the *d* is retained when the word with which it is compounded begins with a vowel, as: *redoo*, *redime*. The same is the case with *se* and *sed*, as: *seduo*, *secnis*, but *sedifico*.

CHAPTER XXX.

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 119. Conjunctions are words serving to connect words and clauses or sentences, and to show the relations in which they stand to one another.

In form they are either simple, as: *et*, and; *sed*, but; *vel*, or; *nam*, for; *ut*, that; or they are compounds, as: *atque*, and yet; *quamvis*, although; *postquam*, after; *quamquam*, although.

In regard to their meaning they may be divided into a number of classes:—

1. **Copulative or Connective Conjunctions**, by which words or clauses are simply placed in juxtaposition with each other, as it were, on a footing of equality, as: *et*, *atque*, *ac*, and *que* (and); *aut*, *vel*, *ne* (or); *neque*, *nec*, *neve*, *neu* (neither or nor); *sive*, *seu* (or if); *etiam*, *quoque*, *necnon* (also).

NOTE.—*Que* and *ne* are always appended to the word which is connected with another, as: *senatus populusque*, the senate and the people; *plus minusve*, more or less.

2. **Adversative Conjunctions**, answering more or less to the English "but," as: *sed*, *autem*, *at*, *ast* (but); *atque* (and yet); *tamen*, *attamen* (yet, but yet); *verum*, *vero*, *enimvero* (but indeed); *ceterum* (however); *quamquam* (however).
3. **Conditional Conjunctions**, answering more or less to the English "if," as: *si* (if); *nisi* or *ni* (if not); *sin* (but if); *dummodo* (if only, provided that); *dummodo ne* (if only not); *quodsi* (if then).
4. **Concessive Conjunctions**, as: *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*, *licet*, *quamquam*, *quamvis* (although); *quum* (although); *ut* (granting that); *quidem* (indeed).
5. **Causal Conjunctions**, as: *quum* (as, since); *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam* (because); *quandoquidem* (seeing that); *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, *etenim* (for).

6. **Final Conjunctions**, expressing a purpose or intention, as: *ut, uti, quo* (in order that, or that thereby); *quis, quominus* (that not); *ne, neve, nev* (that not, lest).
 7. **Temporal Conjunctions**: *quum, ut, ubi* (when); *antequam, priusquam* (before); *postquam* (after); *simulac* or *simulatque* (as soon as); *donec, dum, quoad* (until).
 8. **Conclusive Conjunctions**, as: *ergo, igitur, itaque, ideo, idcirco* (therefore, accordingly); *quocirca, quare, quapropter, quamobrem* (whence, wherefore); *unde* (wherfore).
-

CHAPTER XXXI.

INTERJECTIONS.

§ 120. The Interjections are mostly mere sounds or cries expressive of some mental emotion, of joy, grief, wonder, surprise, and the like, as :

1. Cries of joy : *io, ha, ēvoe, eu, euge, etc.*
2. Cries of grief : *ah, heu, cheu, hei, vae, etc.*
3. Cries of wonder and surprise : *ō, en, eccē, pāpae, dīat, etc.*
4. Cries of disgust : *phui, āpāgē, hui, vah, vae, etc.*

To these may be added the oaths *mehercle, hercle, pol, ēdēpol, mēdius fidius*, and a number of other exclamations, such as *pax*, be still; *infandum*, for shame; *belle*, well done, etc.

PART II.—SYNTAX.

CHAPTER XXXII.

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE—ATTRIBUTE—APPOSITION— RELATIVE PRONOUN.

§ 121. Syntax teaches us how to apply words and their different forms so as to produce sentences.

The simplest sentence consists of a subject and predicate—that is, of a person or thing spoken of, and that which is said (predicated) of it, as:

Aqua fluit.
Equus currit.

The water flows.
The horse runs.

The subject is in the nominative case, and may be a substantive, a personal pronoun, or any word or combination of words which supply the place of a substantive, as:

<i>Equus currit.</i>	The horse runs.
<i>Ego scribo.</i>	I write.
<i>Sapientes docent.</i>	Wise men teach.
<i>Bona appetuntur.</i>	Good things are desired.
<i>Errare humanum est.</i>	To err is human.
<i>Qui hoc fecerit punietur.</i>	Whoever has done this will be punished.
<i>Pro patria mori honestum est.</i>	To die for one's country is honorable.

NOTE.—The personal pronoun is contained in the ending of the Latin verb, so that a sentence may consist of a single word, as: *dormit*, he sleeps or is asleep; *currunt*, they run. The personal pronoun, however, must be expressed when it is emphatic.

§ 122. The predicate consists either of a verb or of a noun, adjective or substantive. In the latter case a link (*copula*) is required to connect the subject with the predicate. This link is usually the verb *esse* (to be), as:

Puer bonus est.

The boy is good.

Cicerō erat orator.

Cicerō was an orator.

Discipulus diligentissimus est.

The scholar is most diligent.

But there are many other verbs besides *essē*, which are used as a copula, and are termed copulative verbs, as: *videor*, I seem; *maneo*, I remain; *duro*, I remain; *fio*, I become; *evado*, I turn out or become; *creor*, I am created; *deligor*, I am elected; *declaror*, I am declared; *dicor*, *appellor*, *vocor*, *nominor*, I am said or called; *designor*, I am appointed; *judicor*, I am judged; and some others, as:

Canis videtur acer.

The dog seems fierce.

Canis dicitur acer.

The dog is called fierce.

Cyrus creatus rex.

Cyrus is created king.

Romulus appellatus est rex.

Romulus was called king.

§ 123. When the predicate is a verb, it must agree with the subject in number and person. All substantives represent the third person, as :

Nos clamamus.

We call out.

Illi clamant.

They call out.

Milites clamant.

The soldiers call out.

When there is more than one subject the predicative verb must be in the plural, and if they are of different persons, the verb is put in the first person plural, if there is a first person among the subjects, and in the second if there is among them a second and no first person. In all other cases the verb is in the third person plural, as :

Ego et frater ambulamus. I and my brother take a walk.

Tu et frater tuus ambulatis. You and your brother take a walk.

Ille et frater ejus ambulant. He and his brother take a walk.

NOTE 1.—Sometimes when there are two or more subjects, the verb (predicate) agrees only with the one nearest to it, as: *voluntas deorum et inimicorum iniquitas vocat nos*, the will of the gods and the injustice of our enemies call upon us.

NOTE 2.—Sometimes a collective substantive, i.e., one implying a number of persons or things through itself in the singular, has the predicate in the plural, as: *pars magna venerunt*, a great part (of men) went.

§ 124. When the predicate is an adjective, it must agree with the subject in gender, number, and case, as :

Miles est callidus.

The soldier is cunning.

Milites sunt callidi.

The soldiers are cunning.

<i>Soror est pulchra.</i>	The sister is beautiful.
<i>Sorores sunt pulchrae.</i>	The sisters are beautiful.
<i>Templum est magna.</i>	The temple is large.
<i>Tempia sunt magna.</i>	The temples are large.

When there are two or more subjects of the same gender, the predicative adjective is either put in the plural of the gender of the subjects, or agrees only with the subject nearest to it, as :

<i>Miles et centuriones impavidi erant.</i>	The soldiers and captains were fearless.
<i>Sorores et mater mea mortuae sunt.</i>	My sisters and my mother are dead.
<i>Tempia et castella permagna erant.</i>	The temples and castles were very great.
<i>Sorores et mater mea mortuae erant.</i>	My sisters and my mother are dead.

When the subjects are of different genders and denote persons, the predicate is commonly in the plural of the masculine, if there is a masculine among the subjects, as :

Pater et mater mortui sunt. My father and mother are dead.

When the subjects are the names of things, the predicative adjective is generally in the neuter plural ; but when the subjects are names of persons mixed with names of things, the predicative adjective may either follow the gender of the persons, or it may be put in the neuter plural, or it agrees with the subject nearest to it, as :

<i>Imperia, honores, victoriae fortuita sunt.</i>	Powers, honours, and victories are accidental.
<i>Multi hostes et arma capti (or capta) sunt.</i>	Many enemies and arms were taken.

NOTE 1.—Sometimes the predicative adjective is used substantively in the neuter gender irrespective of the gender of the subject, as : *lupus est trieste stabulis*, a wolf is a sad thing for the stables; *mulier est varium et semper mutabile*, a woman is a varying and always changeable thing.

NOTE 2.—Sometimes a predicative adjective agrees, not with the subject itself, but rather with what is meant by the subject, as : *capiti conjurationis caesi sunt*, the heads of the conspiracy were scourged; *duo milia hostium capti sunt*, two thousand enemies were captured.

§ 125. When the predicate is a substantive, it can as a rule agree with the subject only in case, as :

Maccenas est dulce deos meum. Maccenas is a sweet ornament to me.

But when the predicative substantive has two genders, as : *rex*, feminine *regina*; *magister*, feminine *magistra*; it also agrees in gender with the subject, as :

Philosophia est magistra vitae. Philosophy is the instructor of life.

Aquila est regina avium. The eagle is the king of birds.

§ 126. Both the subject and the predicate of a simple sentence may be enlarged and extended in a variety of ways.

The substantive forming the subject may receive an attributive adjective, which must agree with it in gender, number, and case, as :

<i>Malus servus aufugit.</i>	The wicked slave ran away.
<i>Pulchra filia mortua est.</i>	The beautiful daughter is dead.
<i>Splendidum templum incensum est.</i>	The splendid temple was set on fire.
<i>Diligentes discipuli discunt.</i>	The diligent pupils learn.

Or it may be enlarged by a qualifying genitive, as :

Domus Ciceronis eversa est. The house of Cicero was destroyed.

Or it may be explained by another substantive, standing to it in the relation of apposition—that is, being only another name for the same person or thing; a substantive standing in apposition to another must always be in the same case with it, as :

Cicero, sumus orator, consul factus est. Cicero, the greatest orator, was made consul.

§ 127. The predicate may be enlarged by adverbs, adverbial combinations, and, when it consists of a transitive verb, by the addition of an object in the accusative, as :

<i>Amicus meus bene dormivit.</i>	My friend has slept well.
<i>Servus ex urbe fugit.</i>	The slave fled from the city.
<i>Servus clam ex urbe fugit.</i>	The slave fled secretly from the city.

Bonus pater filio splendidum The good father gave to his son
librum dedit. a splendid book.

§ 128. An attributive adjective, like the predicative adjective, agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case, hence :

<i>Pater bonus.</i>	A good father.
<i>Patris boni.</i>	Of a good father.
<i>Mater bona.</i>	A good mother.
<i>Matris bonaē.</i>	Of a good mother.
<i>Magnum templum.</i>	A large temple.
<i>Magni templi.</i>	Of a large temple, etc.

NOTE.—When the attributive adjective belongs to several substantives, it generally agrees only with the one nearest to it.

§ 129. A relative pronoun, which always refers to a person or thing mentioned before, must agree with it in gender, number, and person ; its case depends upon the circumstances of the clause in which it occurs, as :

<i>Tu, qui</i> (or if a woman is spoken to, <i>quae</i>) <i>mihi adessem debuisti,</i>	You, who ought to have stood by me, have brought me no help.
<i>Ego, qui rempublicam servavi,</i>	I who have saved the state, have been crushed by hatred.
<i>invidia oppressus sum.</i>	
<i>Hostes, qui urbem ceperant,</i>	The enemies, who had taken the city, suddenly took to flight.
<i>subito aufugerunt.</i>	
<i>Hospes, quem benigne acceperam,</i>	The stranger, whom I had kindly received, carried off
<i>filiam meam abduxit.</i>	my daughter.
<i>Puer, cui librum dederam, moritus est.</i>	The boy, to whom I had given the book, is dead.

When a relative pronoun has a whole clause for its antecedent, that clause is treated as a neuter substantive, the relative accordingly is *quod*, or more commonly *id quod* (a thing which), as :

<i>Timoleon, id quod difficultius putatur, multo sapientius tulit</i>	Timoleon bore prosperity much more wisely than adversity, a
<i>secundam quam adversam fortunam.</i>	thing which is thought more difficult.

NOTE.—Sometimes a relative has no apparent antecedent, in which case *qui* must be rendered by "he who" or "they who," and *quae* by "those things which," as : *qui patriam amat, non dubitat pro ea mortem oppetere*, he who loves his country will not hesitate to die for it; *quae ad me detulisti non vera sunt*, the things which you have reported to me are not true.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

THE NOMINATIVE.

§ 130. The nominative is called the *casus rectus*, while the other cases are termed oblique cases, *casus obliqui*.

The subject of a sentence and the predicate, when it consists of a declinable word, are both in the nominative (§ 121).

The copulative verbs mentioned in § 122 are only modifications of *esse*, and have the predicate in the nominative, like *esse*, e.g. :

Catilina hostis judicatus est. Catiline was declared an enemy.
Munitio[n]es integr[ate] manebant. The fortifications remained entire.

In rebus angustis animosus et In misfortune show thyself courageous and brave.

The same verbs have the predicate in the nominative, even when they are in the infinitive governed by any of the verbs *possum*, *cupio*, *coepi*, *desino*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, as :

Beatus esse sine virtute nemo Without virtue no one can be happy.

Desinant esse timidi. Let them cease to be timid.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

§ 131. (1.) The accusative is the case denoting the object of an action, and is accordingly governed by all transitive verbs, either active or deponent, as :

<i>Puer verberat canem.</i>	The boy beats the dog.
<i>Filius patrem amat.</i>	The son loves the father.
<i>Lego epistolam.</i>	I read the letter.
<i>Scrido epistolam.</i>	I write a letter.
<i>Deus creavit mundum.</i>	God has created the world.
<i>Hostis urbem aggreditur.</i>	The enemy attacks the city.
<i>Hortatur amicum.</i>	He exhorts his friend.

(2.) All active transitive verbs have a complete passive; in changing a clause from the active into the passive,

the object or accusative becomes the subject or nominative, and the person by whom the action is performed, or from whom it proceeds, is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*, as :

Canis a puerō verberatur. The dog is beaten by the boy.

Pater amatur a filio. The father is loved by the son.

Mundus a Deo creatus est. The world has been created by God.

NOTE 1.—Intransitive active verbs have only an impersonal passive—that is, the third person singular, as : *curritur*, running is going on; *currebat*, running was going on; *pugnatur*, fighting is going on. Compare § 60.

NOTE 2.—Some verbs are transitive in one language, but not in others. Thus, I persuade, I pardon, I obey, I trust, and others are in English transitive, but in Latin they are not, and govern the dative, as : *persuadeo fratri meo*, I persuade my brother: *mīhi persuadetur* or *persuasum est*, I am persuaded.

(3.) Many intransitive verbs take an accusative of a substantive which has the same root or is akin to them in meaning ; this is called the cognate accusative ; but such an accusative is generally accompanied by an attributive adjective, as :

<i>Servitūtem servire.</i>	To be a slave.
<i>Gravem pugnam pugnare.</i>	To fight a severe battle.
<i>Vitam tutam vivere.</i>	To live a safe life.
<i>Cursus currere.</i>	To run a race.
<i>Somnium somniare.</i>	To dream a dream.
<i>Jusjurandum jurare.</i>	To take an oath.
<i>Pugna pugnatur.</i>	A battle is fought.

(4.) Intransitive verbs frequently have for their object the accusative neuter of some pronoun, though they generally govern another case or take a preposition, as : *hoc studet unum*, this alone he pursues, for *studeo* otherwise takes the dative ; so also :

<i>Illud tibi assentior.</i>	In that I agree with you.
<i>Quae homines arant, navigant, aedificant, virtuti omnia parent.</i>	Whatever things men plough, sail, or build, all depend on virtue.

The same is the case with transitive verbs, which may thus have two accusatives, as :

<i>Hoc te moneo.</i>	This I advise you.
<i>Illud te hortor.</i>	To that I exhort you.

(5.) The following five impersonal verbs expressive of certain feelings govern the accusative of the person in whom the feeling exists, and the genitive or the infinitive of the thing which causes the feeling. These are, *piget me*, it grieves me or I grieve; *pudet me*, I am ashamed; *taedet me*, I am wearied; *poenitet me*, I repent; *miseret me*, I pity, as :

<i>Piget me stultitiae meae.</i>	I am grieved at my folly.
<i>Pudet me facti.</i>	I am ashamed of the deed.
<i>Miseret me hujus hominis.</i>	I pity this man.
<i>Pudet me confiteri.</i>	I am ashamed to confess.
<i>Taedet me enumerare.</i>	I am wearied to enumerate.

The impersonals *debet*, it is becoming, *dedecet*, it is not becoming, *latet*, it is hidden from, likewise take the accusative of the person to whom anything is or is not becoming, and from whom anything is hidden ; but the thing is expressed either by the infinitive or the nominative of a substantive, which thus become the subjects of the impersonal verbs, as :

<i>Oratorem irasci minime decet,</i>	It is not at all becoming an orator to be angry, to simulate (anger) is not unbecoming.
<i>Trux decet ira feras.</i>	Savage anger is becoming to wild beasts.

§ 132. (1.) Some verbs have a double object, and accordingly govern two accusatives. Thus *doceo*, I teach, and *celo*, I hide or conceal from, have one accusative of the person and another of the thing, as :

<i>Quid nunc te litteras doceam?</i>	Why should I now teach you the letters ?
<i>Iter omnes celat.</i>	He conceals his journey from all.

When these verbs are changed into the passive, the accusative of the thing remains, as :

<i>Cicero per legatos cuncta edocitus est.</i>	Cicero was informed of everything by the ambassadors.
--	---

(2.) A double accusative may be used after the verbs *oro*, I entreat; *rogo*, I ask; *interrogo*, *percontor*, I ask; *posco*, *reposeco*, and *flagito*, I demand, as :

<i>Achaei auxilia Philippum ora-</i>	The Achaeans implored Philip
<i>bant.</i>	for auxiliary troops.
<i>Rogo te quaedam geometrica.</i>	I ask you some geometrical
	questions.
<i>Pacem te poscimus omnes.</i>	We all demand peace of you.
<i>Caesar Aedui frumentum fa-</i>	Caesar demanded corn of the
<i>giabat.</i>	Aedui.

NOTE.—The accusative of the thing with these verbs is most common when it is the neuter of a pronoun, as : *quid me istud rogas?* why do you ask me this ?

(3.) The active of the copulative verbs mentioned in § 122, signifying to make, to name, to appoint, regard, etc., have two accusatives, one of which is the object and the other the predicate, as :

<i>Romulus urbem Romam vocavit.</i>	Romulus called the city Rome.
<i>Non duxit Siculos homines.</i>	He did not regard the Sicilians as human beings.
<i>Populus Ancum Marcium regem</i>	The people made Ancus Marcius
<i>creavit.</i>	king.
<i>Senatus Catilinam hostem judi-</i>	The Senate declared Catiline an
<i>cavit.</i>	enemy.

NOTE.—Verbs compounded with *circum* and *trans* may have two accusatives, one of them being governed by the verb and the other by the preposition, which, in fact, may be repeated before it, as : *Caesar copias Rhenum traduxit*, or *trans Rhenum traduxit*, Caesar led his troops across the Rhine; *Pompeius Roscellum omnia sua praesidia* (or *circum omnia sua praesidia*) *circumduxit*, Pompey led Roscellus round all his entrenchments.

§ 133. Motion towards a place or person is generally expressed by the accusative with a preposition. The only cases in which it is expressed by the accusative alone are those of the names of towns and small islands, and the words *domus*, house, and *rus*, the country, as :

<i>Romam profectus est.</i>	He is gone to Rome.
<i>Athenas advenit.</i>	He arrived at Athens.
<i>Legatos misit Tarentum.</i>	He sent ambassadors to Tarentum.
<i>Redeo domum.</i>	I return home.
<i>Rus ibo.</i>	I shall go into the country.

NOTE.—When the name of a town or island is accompanied by the words *urbs*, *oppidum*, *insula*, the usual prepositions must be employed, as : *peruenit in urbem Athenas*, he arrived in the city of Athens.

§ 134. The accusative without a preposition is used both with verbs and adjectives to express duration of

time and extension of space in answer to the questions, How long? how far? how high? how low? how deep? how broad? e.g.:

<i>Luscinia totam fere noctem canit.</i>	The nightingale sings almost the whole night.
<i>Troia decem annos oppugnata est.</i>	Troy was besieged for ten years.
<i>Trabes inter se binos pedes distabant.</i>	The beams were three feet apart from one another.
<i>Zama quinque dierum iter a Carthagine abest.</i>	Zama is five days' journey from Carthage.
<i>Turris centum pedes alta.</i>	A tower one hundred feet high.
<i>Fossa trecentos pedes longa.</i>	A trench three hundred feet long.

The participle *natus* (born) takes the accusative of the time that a person has been born—that is, describing his age—as:

<i>Decem annos natus est.</i>	He is ten years old.
<i>Cyrus quadriginta annos natus regnare coepit.</i>	Cyrus began to reign at the age of forty.

NOTE 1.—Duration of time is sometimes expressed by the preposition *per* with the accusative, especially when it is to be intimated that the time is a long one, as: *per decem annos*, for ten long years.

NOTE 2.—In answer to the question, “for how long a time?” we must use *in* with the accusative, as: *indutias in triginta annos impetraverunt*, they obtained a truce for thirty years; *in multos annos*, for many years. Hence *in omne tempus*, for all time; *in praesens tempus*, for the present; *in posterum*, for the future; *in diem*, *in horam vivere*, to live (only) for the day, for the hour.

§ 135. An accusative of reference or limitation is used with verbs and adjectives, and denotes the part of a person or thing to which an action or an attribute is limited, as :

<i>Ictus adversum femur.</i>	Struck in front of the thigh.
<i>Oe humeroisque deo similis.</i>	Like a god in face and shoulders.
<i>Saucius pedes.</i>	Wounded in the feet.

NOTE.—This use of the accusative is almost confined to poetry; in prose the ablative is more common, as: *ore humeroisque deo similis*; *saucius pedibus*.

§ 136. The accusative, with or without an interjection, is used in exclamations about a person or a thing; the name of the person or thing in this case is always accom-

panied by some attributive adjective or other attribute, as :

<i>Me miserum</i> or <i>heu me miserum!</i>	Wretched man that I am !
<i>O fallacem hominum spem!</i>	Oh, the deceitful hope of men !
<i>Pro deorum atque hominum fidem!</i>	In the name of gods and men !
<i>Huncine hominem!</i>	Call this a human being !

NOTE.—Such an accusative must be distinguished from the vocative by which a person or thing is *addressed*.

For the prepositions which govern the accusative, see § 115.

CHAPTER XXXV.

THE DATIVE.

§ 137. (1.) The dative generally denotes the remoter object of transitive as well as intransitive verbs—that is, the person or thing to or for which anything is done—as :

<i>Domus dominis aedificatur, non muribus.</i>	The house is built for the owners, not for mice.
<i>Facile, quam calemus, recta consilia aegrotis damus.</i>	When we are in health, we easily give the right advice to the sick.
<i>Non scholae sed vitae discimus.</i>	We learn not for the school, but for life.
<i>Homines hominibus plurimum prosum.</i>	Men are most useful to men.

So also with adjectives, as :

<i>Patriae solum omnibus carum est.</i>	The soil of their native country is dear to all.
<i>Locum idoneum castris delegit.</i>	He selected a place suitable for a camp.

This dative, which occurs with all classes of verbs and adjectives, denotes the person or thing to which anything is of *advantage* or *disadvantage*, and is hence called the *datus commodi* and *incommodi*.

NOTE.—When the preposition “for” signifies “instead of,” “in defence of,” it must be expressed by *pro* with the ablative, as : *pro patre* (or *loco patris*), instead of the father; *pro patria mori*, to die for, or in defence of, one’s country.

When the preposition "to" implies the idea of locality—i.e., motion from one place to another, it cannot be expressed by the dative, but the preposition *in* or *ad* with the accusative must be used, as: *epistola m pueru dedit*, he gave the boy a letter (for his own use, to read it), *epistolam ad puerum dedit*, he gave a letter to be carried to, or addressed to, the boy.

(2.) The verb *esse*, when it denotes possession, is construed with the dative. In English we use the verb "to have," as:

<i>Mihi est amicus.</i>	I have a friend.
<i>Tibi est amicus.</i>	Thou hast a friend.
<i>Nobis sunt amici.</i>	We have friends.
<i>Vobis sunt amici.</i>	You have friends.
<i>Tibi cum eo magna familiaritas est.</i>	You have great intimacy with him.
<i>Patri est domus.</i>	The father has a house.
<i>Mihi est injusta noverca.</i>	I have an unjust step-mother.

(3.) Many verbs, which are in English transitive, are in Latin intransitive, and govern the dative, e.g.:

<i>Subvenio, succurro, auxilior,</i>	I assist.
<i>Resisto, adversor, obnitor, repugno, obsum,</i>	I resist or oppose.
<i>Faveo, indulgeo, studeo,</i>	I favour, am devoted to, study.
<i>Invideo, aemulor,</i>	I envy, emulate.
<i>Placeo, arrideo,</i>	please, smile upon.
<i>Pareo, obedio, obtempero,</i>	I obey.
<i>Servio, prosum,</i>	I serve, am useful to.
<i>Credo, fido, confido, diffido,</i>	I believe, trust, distrust.
<i>Parco, temporo,</i>	I spare, refrain from.
<i>Suadeo, persuadeo,</i>	I advise, persuade.
<i>Adulor, assentior, blandior,</i>	I flatter.
<i>Medeor, medicor,</i>	I cure.
<i>Ignosco,</i>	I pardon.
<i>Gratulor,</i>	I congratulate.
<i>Maledico, obtrecto, convicior,</i>	I revile.
<i>Irascor, succenseo,</i>	I am angry.
<i>Patrocino,</i>	I protect.
<i>Impero, imperito, praecipio, dominor, moderor, temporo,</i>	I command.

NOTE.—These verbs have, of course, only an impersonal passive, as: *mihi invidetur*, I am envied; *vobis invidetur*, you are envied; *mihi persuasum est*, I am persuaded; *mihi persuaderi nunquam potuit*, I could never be persuaded. Compare § 60.

(4.) Some verbs have a different meaning according as they are construed with the dative or accusative, as:

<i>Craveo canem</i> or <i>a cane.</i>	I am on my guard against a dog.
<i>Careo tibi.</i>	I am security to you.
<i>Consulo magistrum.</i>	I consult the master.
<i>Consulo magistro.</i>	I give advice to the master, take care of the master.
<i>Consulo crudeliter in magistrum</i> or <i>de magistro.</i>	I act cruelly to the master.
<i>Metuo and timeo aliquem.</i>	I fear some one.
<i>Metuo and timeo alicui or de aliquo.</i>	I fear for some one.
<i>Convenio ducem.</i>	I meet the general.
<i>Convenit mihi tecum.</i>	I agree with you.
<i>Moderor rem.</i>	I manage, conduct a thing.
<i>Moderor linguae.</i>	I moderate my tongue.
<i>Tempero rem.</i>	I moderate, regulate a thing.
<i>Tempero sociis.</i>	I spare the allies.
<i>Tempero a lacrimis.</i>	I abstain from tears.
<i>Prospicio and provideo aliquid.</i>	I foresee or provide a thing.
<i>Prospicio and provideo alicui.</i>	I take care or provide for some one.

§ 138. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ante*, *post*, *prae*, *ad*, *inter*, *in*, *ob*, *sub*, and *super*, govern a dative; and when their meaning is transitive, they may have an accusative besides, as:

<i>Amicitiam omnibus rebus ante- pono.</i>	I place friendship before all things.
<i>Hannibal Alexandro postpon- endus non est.</i>	Hannibal is not to be regarded as inferior to Alexander.
<i>Honestas utilitati praefere- nda est.</i>	Honourable conduct is to be preferred to utility.
<i>Pelopidas omnibus periculis ad- fuit.</i>	Pelopidas was present in all the dangers.
<i>Aristides interfuit pugnae na- vali.</i>	Aristides took part in the naval battle.
<i>Legatus praefecit exercitu.</i>	A lieutenant was at the head of the army.
<i>Legatum praefecit exercitu.</i>	He put a lieutenant at the head of the army.
<i>Pyrrhus Romanis bellum intulit.</i>	Pyrrhus made war upon the Romans.
<i>Succubuit oneri.</i>	He succumbed under the burden.

NOTE 1.—Verbs of excelling, as *antereo*, *antecedo*, *antecello*, *excello*, *praessto*, are commonly construed with the dative.

NOTE 2.—Some verbs, as *dono*, *circundo*, *circumfundeo*, *aspergo*, and *induo*, admit of two different constructions, without any difference in

meaning, as: *donare alicui civitatem* or *donare aliquem civitate*, to give to some one the rights of a citizen; *urbi murum circumdare* or *urbem muro circumdare*, to surround the city with a wall.

§ 139. A double dative is used with the verbs *esse*, *fieri*, *dare*, *mittere*, *accipere*, *venire*, *relinquere*, *habere*, *tribuere*, *verttere*, *ducere*, and others. One of these datives is usually an ordinary *dativus commodi*, while the other signifies a purpose, intention, or result, as:

<i>Haec res vobis exemplo sit.</i>	Let this thing be for an example to you.
<i>Vobis honori et amicis utilitati extis.</i>	You are an honour to yourselves and an advantage to your friends.
<i>Cui bono fuit?</i>	To whom was it any advantage?
<i>Alicui auxilio venire.</i>	To come to the assistance of somebody.
<i>Hoc mihi criminis datur.</i>	This is imputed to me as a crime.
<i>Legionem castris praesidio reliquit.</i>	He left a legion for a protection to the camp.
<i>Haec res mihi cordi or curae est.</i>	This matter is a concern to me.
<i>Habere aliquem derisi.</i>	To make a laughing-stock of some one.

§ 140. The dative is sometimes used with passive verbs to denote the agent by whom a thing is done, instead of the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*; and with the gerundive the dative is always used to denote the agent, as :

<i>Mihi (for a me) consilium cap-tum est.</i>	The plan has been formed by me.
<i>Quidquid mihi (for a me) suscep-tum est.</i>	Whatever has been undertaken by me.
<i>Cui (for a quo) non auditae sunt istae orationes?</i>	By whom have those speeches not been heard?
<i>Barbarus sum, quia non intelli-gor ulli (for ab ullo).</i>	I am a barbarian, because I am understood by no one.
<i>Hoc mihi (for a me) faciendum est.</i>	This must be done by me.
<i>Ratio nobis (for a nobis) reddenda est.</i>	An account has to be given by us.

§ 141. The impersonal verbs *licet*, it is allowed; *libet*, it pleases; and *expedit*, it is expedient or useful, govern

the dative of the person to whom anything is allowed, pleasing, or expedient, as :

- Licet nemini exercitum ducente* It is allowed, or lawful, to no one to lead an army against his country.
Liber mihi quod non licet. I take pleasure in what is not lawful.

§ 142. Names of towns and small islands in answer to the question Where? are put in the dative, as :

<i>Romae.</i>	At Rome.
<i>Athenis.</i>	At Athens.
<i>Karthagini</i> (or <i>Karthagine</i>).	At Carthage.
<i>Tarenti.</i>	At Tarentum.

NOTE 1.—*Tarenti* is not a genitive, but the ancient locative ending in *i*, and *Romae*—*Romai* is a form of the locative. In Latin the ablative and dative have generally been made to do duty for the locative, whence *Karthagine* as well as *Karthagini*. The same locative is seen in such forms as *domi*, at home; *ruri*, in the country; *humi*, on the ground; *domi militiaeque*, in peace and in war; and in some adverbs of place, as: *hi-c*, here; *ibi*, there; *ubi*, where, etc.

NOTE 2.—*Domi* remains the same when joined by possessive pronouns, as: *domi moae*, at my house; *domi tuas*, at thy house; *domi nostrae*, in our house. But when joined by any other adjective or a genitive of a substantive, it is usual to say *in domo*, as: *in domo privata*, in a private house; *in domo Ciceronis*, in the house of Cicero, but also *domi Ciceronis*.

NOTE 3.—When the name of a town has a qualifying adjective, the ablative must be used with or without the preposition *in*, as: *ipsa Roma*, or *in ipsa Roma*, in Rome itself. When the name of a town or island is accompanied by the words *urbs*, *oppidum*, or *insula*, these words are put in the ablative with or without the preposition *in*, as: *cum essem Athenis*, (in) *urbe celeberrima*, when I was at Athens, a most famous city.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

THE GENITIVE.

A. *The Genitive governed by Substantives.*

§ 143. The most common function of the genitive is to express that relation between two substantives in which

they conjointly designate only one thing, and the one in the genitive is equivalent to an attributive adjective, as :

<i>Domus regis (domus regia).</i>	The king's house, or the royal house.
<i>Hostium (hostiles) exercitus.</i>	The hostile army.
<i>Nomen regis (regium).</i>	The title of king.
<i>Mercedem gloriae.</i>	The reward of fame (fame itself being the reward).

NOTE.—The very name genitive (from *genus*) indicates that this case defines the genus or species to which anything belongs. Thus, when I say *liber fratris*, the word *fratris* defines the book of which I am speaking, and distinguishes it from other books.

When a substantive derived from a transitive verb has a genitive dependent on it, the genitive may either represent the subject or the object, and is accordingly termed the subjective or objective genitive, as *amor Dei*, the love of God. If the meaning is "the love which God bears to man" (*Deus amat*), the genitive is subjective; but when it means "the love which man bears to God" (*Deum amat*), the genitive is objective. So also *injuria sociorum* may mean the wrong done by or to allies.

NOTE.—Sometimes the substantives *filius*, *filia*, *uxor*, *servus* (and especially *ades* and *tempus* when joined by the preposition *ad*) are omitted before the genitive they govern, as : *Caecilia Metelli*, Caecilia, the wife or daughter of Metellus; *Darius Hystraspis*, Darius, son of Hystraspes; *Hasdrubal Gisgo*, Hasdrubal, son of Gisgo; *ad Vestae*, at the temple of Vesta; *ad Vulcani*, at the temple of Vulcan. Compare the English, I have been at St. Paul's.

§ 144. Substantives (also adjectives, pronouns, and numerals, when used as substantives) denoting a part of a whole, have the whole in the genitive, called the particitive genitive, as :

<i>Magnus numerus hostium.</i>	A great number of enemies.
<i>Minima pars exercitus.</i>	The smallest part of the army.
<i>Multum laboris.</i>	Much of labour.
<i>Nihil difficultatis.</i>	Nothing of difficulty, no difficulty at all.
<i>Quid novi?</i>	What news?
<i>Id negotii.</i>	That part of the business.
<i>Plus diligentiae.</i>	More diligence.
<i>Multi militum.</i>	Many of the soldiers.

<i>Ducenti militum.</i>	Two hundred of the soldiers.
<i>Fortissimi omnium Gallorum.</i>	The bravest of all the Gauls.
<i>Tantum auri.</i>	So much gold.
<i>Aliquid veri.</i>	Some truth.
<i>Major juvenum.</i>	The older of the youths.

NOTE 1.—Adjectives of the third declension are scarcely ever used in the partitive genitive, hence : *aliquid dulce* (not *dulcis*), something sweet; *nihil suave* (not *suavis*), nothing pleasant.

NOTE 2.—A partitive genitive is also governed by adverbs of quantity, place, and time, as : *satis* (enough), *parum* (too little), *abunde* and *affutim* (abundantly), *nimiris* and *nimum* (too much). To these also belong several pronominal adverbs, *hic* (here), *huc*, *eo* (thither), *ibi* (there), *ubi* (where), *ubicunque* (wherever), *satis pecuniae* (enough money), *parum temporis* (too little time), *nimum laboris* (too much labour), *hic loci* (in this place), *huc* or *eo* *dementiae* (to that pitch of madness), *ubi terrarum?* (where on earth?), *ubicunque terrarum* (wherever on earth).

§ 145. A substantive accompanied by an adjective, describing the quality of a person or thing, is put in the genitive (the genitive of quality), as :

<i>Vir magni ingenii.</i>	A man of great talent.
<i>Equus mirae magnitudinis.</i>	A horse of wonderful size.
<i>Res magni laboris.</i>	A thing of great labour.
<i>Classis mille et ducentarum navium.</i>	A fleet of 1200 ships.
<i>Vir ordinis senatorii.</i>	A man of senatorial rank.
<i>Homo summae audaciae.</i>	A person of the greatest audacity.

NOTE.—A genitive of quality implies that the quality is inherent and abiding, and not manifested only in certain circumstances.

§ 146. A predicative genitive is governed by *esse* and *fieri*, and denotes possession or duty, as :

<i>Domus est regis.</i>	The house is the king's, belongs to the king.
<i>Maximus honor Spartae senum fuit.</i>	The greatest honour belonged at Sparta to old men.
<i>Omnia viri fiunt.</i>	All things come to belong to the man.
<i>Thebae populi Romani factae sunt.</i>	Thebes was made to belong to the Roman people.

NOTE.—The words signifying part or duty (*munus, officium, proprium*) are frequently omitted with *esse*, so that the genitive appears to be dependent on the verb *esse*, as: *est adolescentis maiores natura vereri*, it is the duty of a young man to respect older persons; *cujusvis hominis est errare*, it is the nature of every man to err; *illud pusilli animi est*, that is the part or sign of a mean spirit; *tempori cedere sapientis est*, it is the part of a wise man to yield to circumstances.

§ 147. The substantives *causā* and *gratiā* (for the sake of), and *instar* (after the likeness, like), which have assumed the character of prepositions, are placed after the genitive, which they govern, as :

Mundus deorum hominumque causa factus est. The world has been made for the sake of gods and men.

Patris mei causa. For the sake of my father.

Epistola voluminis instar erat. The letter was like a volume.

NOTE.—For my sake, thy sake, etc., is expressed by *meā causā*; *tuū, suā, nostrā, vestrā causa*.

B. The Genitive with Adjectives.

§ 148. Many adjectives which express capacity, desire, experience, fulness, remembering, forgetting, and require a substantive as a complement to their meaning, take that substantive in the genitive. The genitive itself is sometimes of an objective and sometimes of a partitive nature. Such adjectives are :

<i>Avidus</i> , covetous,	<i>Studioſus</i> , fond,
<i>Plenus</i> , full,	<i>Conſcius</i> , conscious,
<i>Cupidus</i> , eager,	<i>Inſcius, neſcius</i> , ignorant,
<i>Peritus</i> , skilled,	<i>Compos</i> , master of,
<i>Imperitus</i> , unskilled.	<i>Inops</i> , weak,
<i>Memor</i> , mindful, remembering.	<i>Potens</i> , powerful,
<i>Inmemor</i> , unmindful,	<i>Impotens</i> , not powerful,
<i>Particeps</i> , partaking,	<i>Insuetus</i> , unaccustomed,
<i>Expers, exors</i> , not sharing,	<i>Providus</i> , foreseeing,—e.g.:—
<i>Verres cupidus fuit pecuniae.</i>	Verres was eager for money.
<i>Homo cupidus rerum novarum.</i>	A person eager for revolution.
<i>Omnium doctrinarum studiosus fui.</i>	I have been fond of all kinds of learning.
<i>Conſcius conſurationis fuerat.</i>	He had been conscious of the conspiracy.
<i>Peritus belli navalis.</i>	Skilled in naval warfare.
<i>Gallia est plena civium Romanorum.</i>	Gaul is full of Roman citizens.
<i>Memor beneficī.</i>	Remembering an act of kindness.
<i>Inops consiliī.</i>	Weak in giving advice.
<i>Potens irae.</i>	Controlling one's anger.
<i>Providus rerum futurarum.</i>	Foreseeing future events.

NOTE.—The present participles of transitive verbs, when used as adjectives, have their object in the genitive; but when they are real participles they retain their object in the accusative. Thus *miles laborum patiens* is a soldier capable of enduring hardships, whereas *labores patiens* is one who is actually enduring hardships.

§ 149. Some adjectives are construed either with the genitive or dative indiscriminately, though sometimes with a slight difference of meaning. Such adjectives are:

<i>Par</i> , equal, a match for,	<i>Contrarius</i> , contrary,
<i>Impar</i> , unequal,	<i>Proprius</i> , belonging to,
<i>Similis</i> , similar, like,	<i>Communis</i> , common,
<i>Dissimilis</i> , unlike,	<i>Sacer</i> , sacred,
<i>Aequalis</i> , equal in age,	<i>Superstes</i> , surviving—e.g.:—
<i>Par ceteris</i> , or <i>par ceterorum</i> .	Equal to the rest.
<i>Templum sacrum dei</i> or <i>deo</i> .	A temple sacred to the god.
<i>Superstes patris</i> or <i>patri</i> .	Surviving his father.

NOTE.—*Similis* and *dissimilis*, when expressing resemblance in outward appearance, are generally construed with the dative; but when denoting resemblance in character, they take the genitive, as: *canis similis est lupo*, the dog is like the wolf (in appearance); *Crassus Alexandri similis esse voluit*, Crassus wanted to be like Alexander (as a conqueror).

C. The Genitive with Verbs.

§ 150. Verbs of remembering, forgetting, and reminding generally govern an objective genitive. They are: *memini*, *reminiscor*, *recordor*, I remember; *obliviscor*, I forget; *admoneo*, *commoneo*, I remind—e.g.:

<i>Animus meminit praeteritorum.</i>	The mind remembers past things.
<i>Reminiscor veteris amicitiae.</i>	I remember the old friendship.
<i>Obliviscor Epicuri.</i>	I forget Epicurus.
<i>Admonuit me beneficij tui.</i>	He reminded me of your act of kindness.

NOTE.—Verbs of reminding are also construed with the accusative, or the ablative with *de*—the former when the thing is expressed by a neuter pronoun, as: *hoc te admoneo*, I remind you of this; *de proelio vos admonui*, of the battle I have reminded you. Those of remembering and forgetting sometimes take the accusative, and *recordor* nearly always, as: *patrias beneficia meminerunt*, they remember the kind acts of their country; *oblivisci nihil soles*, you are wont to forget nothing; *Catonem senem memini*, I remember Cato when he was an old man.

§ 151. Some verbs expressing the feelings of pity, shame, regret, and disgust, have the person or thing calling forth these feelings in the genitive. Such verbs are: *misereor* and *miseresco*, I pity; and the impersonals *miseret*, *miserescit*, and *miseretur me*, I pity; *piget me*, it vexes me; *poenitet me*, I repent; *pudet me*, I am ashamed; *taedet me* or *pertaesum est*, I am wearied or disgusted—e.g.:

<i>Miserere mei.</i>	Pity me.
<i>Pudet me negligentiae meae.</i>	I am ashamed of my negligence.
<i>Misereor (or miseret me) amici mei.</i>	I pity my friend.
<i>Poenitet me peccati.</i>	I repent of my mistake.

NOTE.—When the thing calling forth the feelings is expressed by a verb, we may use either the infinitive or the conjunction *quod*, as *non poenitet me vizisse* or *quod vixi*.

§ 152. The verbs of accusing (*accuso, arguo, insimulo*), convicting (*convinco, coarguo*), condemning (*damno, condemno*), and acquitting (*absolvo, libero*), and a few others, take the substantive, naming the offence or punishment in the negative—e.g. :

<i>Nemo ante actarum rerum ac-</i>	Let no one be accused of his past
<i>cusetur.</i>	actions.
<i>Fannius Verrem insimulat ava-</i>	Fannius accuses Verres of avarice
<i>ritiae et audacie.</i>	and audacity.
<i>Aliquem sceleris arguere.</i>	To charge one with a crime.
<i>Furti damnatus est.</i>	He was condemned for theft.
<i>Negligentiae convictus est.</i>	He was convicted of negligence.
<i>Capitis damnatus.</i>	Condemned to death.

§ 153. Verbs of buying, selling, and valuing—as : *eo*, I buy ; *vendo*, I sell ; *veneo*, I am sold ; *sto, consto, sum*, I cost ; *prosto, liceo*, I am for sale ; *conduco*, I hire ; *loco, colloco*, I let ; *aestimo, puto, duco, habeo, pendo, facio*, I value or tax—govern the genitive of the price or value, when it is expressed in a general way by *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, minoris, pluris, plurimi, maximi, or minimi*,—e.g. :

<i>Auctoritatem tuam magni aes-</i>	I value your authority highly.
<i>timo.</i>	
<i>Aliquid pluris putare.</i>	To value something more highly.
<i>Emi Canius hortos tanti, quanti</i>	Canius bought the gardens at
<i>Pythius voluit.</i>	the price which Pythus wished.
<i>Vendo meum frumentum pluris.</i>	I sell my corn at a higher price.

But when a definite price is mentioned, the ablative must be used, as :

<i>Isocrates vendidit unam ora-</i>	Isocrates sold one speech for
<i>tionem viginti talentis.</i>	twenty talents.

§ 154. The impersonal verbs *interest* and *refert* (it is of interest or importance) take the person to whom anything is of interest in the genitive; but when the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, the Latins use the possessive forms *meā*, *tuā*, *suā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*—e.g.:

Interest omnium recte facere. It is of interest to all to act rightly.

Interest reipublicae. It is of interest to the state.

Clodii intererat Milonem perire. It was of importance to Clodius that Milo should perish.

Meā refert. It is of interest to me.

Nihil tuā referebat. It was of no interest to you.

NOTE.—The thing which is of interest or importance is never expressed by a substantive, but either by an infinitive, or by a clause beginning with *ut* or *ne*, or by an interrogative clause. Sometimes the thing of interest is expressed by a neuter pronoun, as: *hoc interesse arbitror*, I believe this to be of interest; *nihil interest*, quo modo *hoc fiat*, it is of no importance how this is done; *multum interest ut videam*, it is of great importance that I should see you.

D. Free Use of the Genitive.

§ 155. Poets and late writers make a very free use of the genitive both with verbs and adjectives, as:

Sceleris purus. Free from guilt.

Solutus operum. Released from work.

Desine querelarum. Cease from complaints.

Felix cerebri. Lucky in regard to the brain.

Notus paterni animi. Known for fatherly affection.

Modicus voluptatis. Moderate in pleasure.

Atrox odii. Savage in hatred.

NOTE.—*Animi* is sometimes used as a locative (like *domi*) for the ablative, as: *crucior animi*, I am tortured in mind; *pendo animi*, I am in a state of mental suspense.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

THE ABLATIVE.

§ 156. The ablative expresses a variety of relations which are indicated in English by the prepositions *from*, *by*, *with*, *in*, or *at*. The chief ideas expressed by the ablative are those of separation and origin, place where,

and those of cause, manner, and instrument. The ablative is used sometimes with, and sometimes without, a preposition.

A. Ablative of Separation.

§ 157. Separation from a person or thing is the proper and original meaning of the ablative. It is used (with and without the prepositions *a* or *ab*, *ex*, *de*) with such verbs as *cedo*, *pello*, *arceo*, *prohibeo*, *sollo*, *libero*, and many others compounded with the prepositions *ab*, *ex*, *de*, *dis*, *se*, e.g.:

<i>Cedere ingratā patriā</i> or <i>ex ingratā patriā</i> .	To withdraw from an ungrateful country.
<i>Brutus arcebā reditu</i> or <i>a reditu tyrannū</i> .	Brutus kept the tyrant from returning.
<i>Expellere aliquem finib⁹</i> or <i>e finib⁹</i> .	To expel one from the territory.
<i>Cibo se abstinere</i> (or <i>a cibo</i>).	To abstain from food.
<i>Ubios obsidione liberat.</i>	He frees the Ubii from the blockade.
<i>Solvēre aliquem legib⁹.</i>	To exempt one from the laws.

NOTE.—*Solvēre*, *exsolvēre*, *liberare*, *levare*, and *eximere*, are generally construed with the ablative alone; and in such phrases as *movere tribū* (to remove one from his tribe), *movere senatu*, *loco*, *vestigio*, prepositions are never used.

§ 158. The ablative alone is used with the verbs of depriving and filling, such as: *privare*, *spoliare*, *nudare*, *orbare*, *fraudare*, *exuēre*, *complēre*, *implēre*, *explēre*, and with verbs denoting plenty or want, such as: *abundare*, *florēre*, *vacare*, *carēre*, *egēre*, *indigēre*—e.g.:

<i>Urbem omni commeatu privavit.</i>	He deprived the city of all supplies.
<i>Murus defensoribus nudatus.</i>	A wall denuded of its defenders.
<i>Excire hostem castris.</i>	To deprive an enemy of his camp.
<i>Sol terram luce complet.</i>	The sun fills the earth with light.
<i>Galli equitatu abundant.</i>	The Gauls abound in cavalry.
<i>Cura vacare.</i>	To be free from care.

§ 159. The expression *opus est*, there is need, takes the ablative of the thing needed, as :

<i>Opus mihi est libro.</i>	I need a book.
<i>Opus mihi est libris.</i>	I want books.

But *opus* may also be treated as an indeclinable predicate adjective, as : *libri mihi opus sunt*, I want books.

NOTE.—When the thing needed is expressed by a verb, the infinitive must be used, or the ablative of a past participle, as : *id sciri non opus est*, it is not necessary that this should be known ; *mature facta opus est*, it is necessary to act speedily.

B. Ablative of Origin.

§ 160. The ablative of origin denotes that of which anything is made, or from which it originates, and is used sometimes with, and sometimes without, a preposition. It is found most commonly with the participles *natus*, *ortus*, *oriundus* (sprung from), *genitus*, *satus*, *editus*, *creatus* (begotten)—e.g.:

<i>Mercurius Jove natus et Maia.</i>	Mercury born (or son) of Jupiter and Maia.
<i>E nobis nati liberi vocantur.</i>	Those born of us are called our children.
<i>Renibus or ex renibus laborare.</i>	To suffer from the kidneys.
<i>Ex amicis inimici existunt.</i>	Out of friends become enemies.
<i>Aeger erat vulneribus.</i>	He was suffering from his wounds.

Origin is, however, very frequently expressed by the preposition *ex* or *de* with all kinds of verbs.

C. Ablative of Cause, Manner, and Instrument.

§ 161. The ablative without a preposition is used with verbs and adjectives to indicate the cause from which anything arises, the manner in which anything happens, and the means or instrument by which anything is effected—e.g.

<i>Amore pugnandi in exercitu mansit.</i>	He remained in the army from his love of fighting.
<i>Hoc ego non faciebam insolentia.</i>	I was not doing this from insolence.
<i>Ista ratione tu id assequi non poteris.</i>	In that way you will not be able to attain it.
<i>Rem publicam summa aequitate constituit.</i>	He arranged the affairs of the state with the greatest fairness.
<i>Virgis aliquem caedere.</i>	To scourge one with rods.
<i>Suevi lacte atque pecore vivunt.</i>	The Suevi live on (by means of) milk and cattle.

NOTE 1.—When a person is not the agent, but only the instrument through which anything is done, *per* with the accusative is used, as *mittitur tibi epistola a patre per servum*, the letter is sent to you by your father through a slave. The preposition "with" is rendered by *cum* only when it denotes company, and not when it denotes the instrument, as *venit cum gladio*, he came with (having) a sword; but *interfecit cum gladio*, he killed him with (by means of) a sword.

NOTE 2.—A preventive cause is expressed by *prae* with the ablative, as : *solem prae jaculorum multitudine non videbitis*, you will not see the sun because of the multitude of missiles; *prae gaudie ubi sim nescio*, I do not know for joy where I am.

NOTE 3.—The ablative of manner is used only when the substantive has an attributive adjective, as *magna facilitate*, with great ease; but when manner is expressed by a substantive alone, the preposition *cum* and sometimes *per* is used, as: *cum cura*, with care; *cum diligentia*, with diligence; *per incuriam*, through carelessness. But the ablatives *modo*, *more*, *rations*, *ritu*, *lege*, *ordine*, *casu*, *jure*, *merito*, *consilio*, *consuetudine* are always used in the ablative alone, even when they have no qualifying attribute.

D. Ablative of Time.

§ 162. The time when and within which anything happens or is done is expressed by the ablative alone without any preposition, as :

<i>Vere.</i>	In spring.
<i>Aestate.</i>	In summer.
<i>Hieme.</i>	In winter.
<i>Hoc anno.</i>	In this year.
<i>Die et nocte.</i>	In the day and in the night.
<i>Quinto quoque anno.</i>	Every fifth year.
<i>Agamemnon vix decem annis unam cepit urbem.</i>	Agamemnon with difficulty took one city in ten years.

E. Ablative of Place.

§ 163. The place where anything happens or is done is expressed by the ablative, sometimes with, and sometimes without a preposition. The ablative alone is used—

(1.) In the phrases *dextrā* (*sc. parte*), on the right hand; *laevā* or *sinistrā*, on the left hand; *terrā marique*, by land and by sea. The word *locus*, also, when accompanied by an attributive adjective or pronoun, is generally in the ablative alone, as:

<i>Hoc loco, illo loco.</i>	In this, in that place.
<i>Meliore loco.</i>	In a better place.
<i>Altiore loco.</i>	In a higher place.
<i>Suo loco</i> (also <i>in loco</i>).	In the right or proper place.

<i>Loco</i> (also <i>in loco</i>) <i>parentis.</i>	In the place of a parent.
<i>Hac parte.</i>	On this side.
<i>Eadem via.</i>	On or by the same road.
<i>Illa itinere.</i>	By that road.

(2.) In all names of places when they have the attribute *totus*, as:

<i>Totā urbe.</i>	Throughout the city.
<i>Totā Siciliā.</i>	Throughout Sicily.
<i>Toto orbe terrarum.</i>	On the whole earth.

But when a particular point or points within the whole are to be indicated, the preposition *in* may be used, as:

<i>Totā in Italia terrae motus facti sunt.</i>	In several parts throughout Italy earthquakes happened.
<i>In totā Sicilia.</i>	In every part of the whole of Sicily.

(3.) When books or part of books are referred to, as:

<i>Libro secundo.</i>	In the second book.
<i>Capite quarto.</i>	In the fourth chapter.
<i>Vereū decimo.</i>	In the tenth verse.

But when a special part or passage within a book is to be indicated, the preposition *in* may be used, as:

Agricultura laudatur in eo libro, qui est de tuaenda re familiarī. Agriculture is praised in that book, which treats about taking care of one's property.

§ 164. The ablative of quality is used, like the genitive of quality (see § 145), when a substantive with an attributive adjective is employed to describe the nature or character of a person or thing, as :

<i>Femina eximia pulchritudine.</i>	A woman of extraordinary beauty.
<i>Corpus inusitata magnitudine.</i>	A body of unusual size.
<i>Flumen difficili transiū.</i>	A river difficult to cross.

NOTE.—The ablative of quality generally denotes such qualities as are not permanent, while the genitive of quality describes those which are lasting and inherent in a person or thing.

§ 165. The ablative is used with comparatives instead of *quam* with the nominative or accusative, as :

<i>Nemo est miserior me (quam ego).</i>	No one is more wretched than I.
<i>Nemo fortunatior est Lepido</i>	No one is more fortunate than <i>(quam Lepidus).</i>
<i>Nihil est virtute (quam virtus)</i>	Nothing is more loveable than <i>amabilis.</i>
<i>Dolabellā tuo nihil scito mihi esse jucundius</i> (for <i>quam Dollabellum</i>).	Be sure that nothing is more agreeable to me than your Dolabella.
<i>Num mittent hominem Servilio digniorem?</i>	Will they send a man more worthy than Servilius?

NOTE.—The ablatives *opinione*, *spe*, *expectatione*, *aequo*, *justo*, and *solito* are regularly joined to a comparative instead of *quam*, as: *opinione celerius*, more quickly than was thought; *serius spe*, later than was hoped; *plus aequo*, more than is fair; *solito magis*, more than usual. So also *dicto citius*, more quickly than the word is spoken.

§ 166. The ablative is also used with comparatives to express the amount of difference between the things compared. The most common ablatives of this kind are: *multo*, *paulo*, *nihilo*, *eo*, *quo*, *tanto*, *quanto*, e.g.:

<i>Turris decem pedibus altior erat quam murus.</i>	The tower was ten feet higher than the wall.
<i>Multo altior.</i>	Much higher.
<i>Paulo longius.</i>	A little farther.
<i>Dimidio minor.</i>	Smaller by one half.
<i>Biennio major.</i>	Two years older.

NOTE.—The prepositions *ante* and *post*, when used as adverbs, signify virtually “earlier” and “later,” and may accordingly take an ablative to express by how much earlier or later one thing is than another, as: *multo ante*, long before; *haud ita multo post*, not very long after; *multis saeculis ante*, many centuries before; *tribus annis post*, three years later. *Ante* and *post* in this case are generally put after the ablative, or between the substantive and its attribute, as: *tribus annis post*, or *tribus post annis*; *paucis diebus post*, or *paucis post diebus*.

§ 167. The following nine deponent verbs and their compounds govern the ablative: *utor*, *fruor*, *fugor*, *vescor*, *potior*, *nitor*, *laetor*, *glorior*, and *dignor*, as:

<i>Bene utitur armis et equis.</i>	He uses arms and horses well.
<i>Qui pace volunt frui.</i>	Those who wish to enjoy peace.
<i>Officio fungi.</i>	To perform a duty.
<i>Lacte vescor.</i>	I feed on milk.
<i>Oppido potitur.</i>	He takes possession of the town.
<i>Suare gesta laetatur or gloriatur.</i>	He rejoices at, or boasts of his own exploit.

NOTE 1.—*Potior* often takes the genitive, and always in the phrase *serum potiri*, to seize upon the management of the state.

NOTE 2.—The adjectives *dignus*, worthy, and *indignus*, unworthy, govern the ablative of the thing of which any one is worthy or unworthy, as: *laude dignus*, worthy of praise; *multi indigni sunt tunc*, many are unworthy of the light of day.

§ 168. Respecting the prepositions which always or sometimes govern the ablative, see §§ 116 and 117.

§ 169. Names of towns and small islands in answer to the question Whence? are always put in the ablative without a preposition, as :

<i>Profectus Romā.</i>	He starts from Rome.
<i>Demaratus Corinthō fugit.</i>	Demaratus fled from Corinth.

NOTE.—When the appellatives *oppidum*, *urbs*, or *insula* are added, they take the ordinary preposition *ab* or *ex*, as *venit ex oppido Brundisio*, he came from the town of Brundisium.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

THE VOCATIVE.

§ 170. (1.) The vocative is used in addressing a person or thing, either with or without an interjection, the most common interjection being *o*, as :

<i>Et tu, Brute!</i>	You too, Brutus!
<i>Tu, Pompei, mihi aderas!</i>	You, Pompey, stood by me.
<i>O superi!</i>	O ye gods above!
<i>O soror, o conjux, o femina sola</i>	O my sister, my wife, O thou
<i>superstes!</i>	only surviving woman!

(2.) Instead of the vocative, the nominative is often used, especially in poetry and early Latin, as :

<i>Audi tu, populus Albanus.</i>	Hear it, ye people of Alba.
<i>Vos, O Popilius sanguis.</i>	O ye of the blood of Pompilius.

A noun in apposition to a vocative should of course be in the vocative, but it frequently appears in the nominative.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 171. An adjective, whether used as an attribute or as a predicate, must agree with the substantive to which it belongs or refers in gender, number, and case. (See §§124 and 126.)

§ 172. Adjectives, generally in the plural, are frequently used as substantives in the masculine gender when they denote persons, and in the neuter when they denote things, as :

<i>Sapientes.</i>	Wise men.
<i>Boni.</i>	Good men.
<i>Omnis boni.</i>	All good men.
<i>Multos ex suis amiserunt.</i>	They lost many of their own men.
<i>Omne bonum.</i>	Every good thing.
<i>Omne malum.</i>	Every evil.
<i>Honestia.</i>	Honourable things.
<i>Turpia.</i>	Disgraceful things.

§ 173. Some neuter adjectives are used in the sense of abstract substantives, as :

<i>Verum</i> for <i>veritas.</i>	The truth.
<i>Justum</i> for <i>justitia.</i>	Justice.
<i>Honestum</i> for <i>honestas.</i>	Honourable conduct.
<i>Aequum</i> for <i>aequitas.</i>	Equity.
<i>De integro.</i>	Afreh or anew.
<i>Ex or de improviso.</i>	In an unforeseen manner.

§ 174. Some adjectives denoting time or place are used where in English we employ a substantive or an adverbial expression. The most common of such adjectives are : *primus, ultimus, extremus, postremus, summus, infimus* or *imus, intimus, medius, reliquus*—e.g. :

<i>In media aqua.</i>	In the midst of the water.
<i>Summa in arbore.</i>	On the top of the tree.
<i>Prima nocte.</i>	In the first part of the night.
<i>In extrema epistola.</i>	In the last part of the letter.
<i>Dedimus nos toto philosophiae.</i>	We devoted ourselves wholly to philosophy.

§ 175. Proper names generally cannot have an attributive adjective, but they may have an apposition, such as *vir*, *homo*, *adolescens*, *mulier*, *urbs*, *oppidum*, etc., to which an attribute may be given—e.g.:

Socrates, homo sapiens. The wise Socrates.

Alexander, adolescens nobilis. The noble young Alexander.

But when the attribute has become a surname, it is added at once to the proper name, as: *Alexander Magnus, Sulla Felix*. So also all cases where a person's native place is indicated by an adjective, as: *Miltiades Atheniensis*, Miltiades of Athens.

§ 176. The Latins frequently use adjectives where in English we employ adverbs. In this case the adjective forms a kind of apposition to the substantive, describing the condition of the agent rather than the manner of the action, as :

Natura tacita judicat. Nature judges tacitly.

Imprudens hoc feci. I have done this imprudently.

Multi eos quos vivos coluerunt mortuos contumelia afflidunt. Many treat with insults after death those whom they have honoured while they were alive.

Adjectives of this kind are *invitus*, unwilling; *laetus*, joyful; *libens*, glad; *sciens*, knowing; *imprudens*, imprudent; *imperitus*, unskilled; so also *domesticus*, at home; *matutinus*, in the morning; *sublimis*, aloft.

Note.—Several adjectives are used as substantives, some substantive being understood, which determines their gender, as: *patria* (viz., *terra*, *urbs*, or *civitas*), one's native country or city; *fera* (*bestia*), a wild beast; *cani* (*capilli*), gray hair; *dextra* and *laeva* (*manus*), the right and left hand; *hiberna* (*castra*), winter quarters; *stativa* (*castra*), a stationary camp; *praetexta* (*toga*), the toga praetexta; *frigida* (*aqua*), cold water, and others.

§ 177. The comparative of an adjective or adverb often signifies that a quality exists in too high a degree—that is, in a higher degree than usual, as :

Senectus est naturā loquacior. Old age is naturally rather talkative.

Liberius vivebat. He lived rather freely or too freely.

§ 178. When two qualities existing in the same person or thing are compared with each other, either both

adjectives are put in the comparative, or the comparative of the first only is indicated by *magis*, as :

Corpora magna magis quam Bodies rather large than strong.
firma.

Oratio verior quam gratior. A speech more true than pleasing.

§ 179. The superlative in Latin not only indicates the highest degree absolutely, but also relatively, which we express in English by "very" with the positive, whence *vir fortissimus* may mean the bravest man, or a very brave man ; *optime valeo*, I am very well.

NOTE.—The force of a superlative is sometimes increased by the addition of *quam*, with or without the addition of the verb *possum*, as : *quam maximas copias armat*, or *quam maximas potest*, he arms as large a force as he can.

CHAPTER XL.

PRONOUNS.

§ 180. It may be laid down as a general rule that all pronouns capable of expressing gender must agree in gender and number with the substantive which they represent ; but their case depends upon the structure of the clause in which they occur—e.g. :

Bellum, quod Caesar contra Gallos gessit. The war, which Caesar waged against the Gauls.

Jason navem aedificat, quae Argo nominata est, et in eam ascendit. Jason built the ship, which was called Argo, and in it he embarked.

§ 181. In the personal pronouns, gender cannot be distinguished, except in that of the third person, where we have *is*, *ea*, *id*, or *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, he, she, it.

The nominative of the personal pronouns is generally not expressed in Latin, being represented by the terminations of the verb ; but when the pronouns are emphatic they must be expressed, as :

Ego te invitavi, sed tu non venisti. I invited you, but you did not come.

Nos, nos consules desumus. We, we the consuls are wanting in doing our duty.

§ 182. The reflexive pronoun of the third person, *sui*,

sibi, se, and the possessive *suis, a, um*, are used as a rule only when they refer to the subject of the clause in which they occur, as :

Laudat se.

He praises himself.

Sibi persuasum habet.

He has persuaded himself.

*Septem Graeciae sapientes civi-
tatibus suis praefuerunt.*

The seven wise men of Greece
were at the head of their states.

§ 183. A possessive pronoun always represents a genitive; hence when a noun stands in apposition to it, the noun is put in the genitive, as :

Nulla epistola tua.

No letter from you, or of you.

*Quum mea scripta nemo legat
vulgo recitare timentis.*

As no one reads my writings (the
writings of me) who am afraid
to read them to the multitude.

Possessive pronouns are not expressed in Latin when they can be easily understood from the context.

§ 184. For the general meaning of the three demonstrative pronouns, see § 51.

Hic, haec, hoc, referring to something near the speaker, is sometimes equivalent to the English "the present," as :

In hac magnificentia urbis.

In the present splendour of the city.

Qui haec vituperari volunt.

Those who wish the present state of affairs to be blamed.

Ille, illa, illud, signifies not only that or yon person or thing spoken of, but also "the well known" or "the famous," as :

Illa aquila.

That famous eagle.

Illa Medea.

That famous Medea.

When *hic* and *ille* are opposed to each other in a sentence, *hic* generally means "the latter," and *ille* "the former," as :

*Caesar beneficis atque muni-
ficientia magnus habebatur,
integritate vitae Cato: ille
maneuveridine et misericordia
clarus factus, huic severitas
dignitatem addiderat.*

Caesar was thought great for his acts of kindness and munificence, Cato for the purity of his life : the former became renowned through his gentleness and clemency, on the latter his sternness had conferred dignity.

Iste, ista, istud, properly the demonstrative of the second person, often conveys the idea of contempt, especially when in a speech an opponent is pointed to, as :

Iste gladiator.

That (contemptible) gladiator.

§ 185. The determinative pronoun *is, ea, id*, is really the personal pronoun of the third person, and refers to a person or thing known from the context, like the English *he, she, it*. But it is most commonly used as the antecedent to a relative pronoun, as *is qui, he who*; in this sense, however, it is often omitted, when it is not emphatic, so that *qui* alone comes to mean "he who." But when it is very emphatic, it is introduced after the relative clause, as :

Quod virtute effici debet, id ten- What ought to be effected by
tatur pecunia. virtue, that is attempted by money.

Idem, eadem, idem (the same), is sometimes used when to one attribute another is added, where we say "and also," as:

Avunculus meus, vir innoc- My uncle, a most harmless and
temimus idemque doctissimus. also a most learned man.
Contulit se ad Satrapem Ioniae He went to the Satrap of Ionia,
eundemque generum regie. who was also the king's son-in-law.

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum (self), must sometimes be rendered in English by "very," "just," or "exactly," as:

<i>Ipsa natali die.</i>	On his very birthday, or just on his birthday.
<i>Hoc ipso loco.</i>	Exactly in this place.
<i>Hac ipsa de causa.</i>	For this very reason.

When *ipse* is joined to a personal pronoun, great care must be taken to determine whether it refers to the subject or the object of the clause, as:

<i>Me ipse laudo.</i>	I praise myself (it is not another person that praises me).
<i>Me ipsum laudo.</i>	I praise myself (not another person).
<i>Cato se ipse interfecit.</i>	Cato killed himself (i.e., he himself did it).
<i>Se ipsum interfecit.</i>	He killed himself (not any one else).

CHAPTER XLI.

THE VERB—ITS VOICES AND MOODS IN GENERAL.

§ 186. The general character of the moods is—

(1.) The indicative states a fact or asks a direct question, as :

Pater filium Athenas misit. The father sent his son to Athens.
Cur hoc fecisti? Why have you done this?

(2.) The subjunctive does not express a fact, but only actions conceived by the mind as possible, intended, wished for, or conditional, as :

<i>Dicat aliquis.</i>	Some one may say.
<i>Edo ut vivam.</i>	I eat that I may live.
<i>Venias ad me.</i>	May you come to me.
<i>Si ad me venias.</i>	If you come to me.

(3.) The imperative expresses a command either to be complied with at once, or to be obeyed whenever occasion requires it, as :

<i>Subvenite mihi miserio.</i>	Help me, wretched man.
<i>Hominem in urbe ne sepelito.</i>	Thou shalt not bury a man in the city.

(4.) The infinitive can scarcely be called a mood ; it is only the name of an action, or a verbal substantive occurring only in the nominative and accusative, the remaining cases being supplied by the gerund, as :

<i>Amare patriam honestum est.</i>	To love one's country is honourable.
<i>Non potuit negare.</i>	He could not deny it.
<i>Cupiditas habendi.</i>	The desire to possess.

The infinitive differs from ordinary substantives only by governing its case as a verb.

CHAPTER XLII.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD AND ITS TENSES.

§ 187. Besides the cases in which single facts are stated, the indicative is commonly used after indefinite relatives and those which have the suffix *cunque*, as : *quis-quis* (whoever), *quotquot* (however many), *quicunque* (whoever), *quantusunque* (however great), *utut*, *utcunque* (howsoever), *quamquam* (although)—e.g. :

<i>Quidquid dicas.</i>	Whatever you may say.
<i>Uicunque esse res habet.</i>	However the matter may stand.
<i>Quicunque is est.</i>	Whoever he may be.
<i>Quamquam non scripsiisti.</i>	Although thou hast not written.

NOTE.—Later writers sometimes use the subjunctive with these relatives.

§ 188. The indicative is used in both parts of an hypothetical sentence, when the supposition is regarded as true, or is assumed to be true for the sake of argument, as:

<i>Si est boni consulis ferre opem patriae, est etiam bonorum civium.</i>	If it is the part of a good consul (as it really is) to render help to his country, it is also the part of good citizens.
---	---

<i>Si Deus aut anima aut ignis est, idem est animus hominis.</i>	If God is either air or fire (assuming this to be true for the sake of argument), the soul of man is the same.
--	--

§ 189. The past tenses of the verbs *oportet*, *necesse est*, *debeo*, *convenit*, *possum*, *licet*, and of the expressions *par*, *fas*, *aequum*, *justum*, *consentaneum*, *satis*, *satius*, *melius*, *aequius est*, are used in the indicative, where, according to the English idiom, we might expect the subjunctive. The imperfect in these cases signifies that something ought or might have been done, and that it is not too late yet; whereas the perfect and pluperfect intimate that it is too late—e.g.:

<i>Ad mortem te, Catilina, duci jam pridem oportebat.</i>	You, Catilina, ought long ago to have been put to death (and it may yet be done).
---	---

<i>Patris loco eum colere debebas.</i>	You ought to have honoured him like a father (and you may still do so).
--	---

<i>Longe melius fuit interficere furem.</i>	It would have been much better to kill the thief (but it cannot be done now).
---	---

<i>Quanto melius fuerat.</i>	How much better would it have been.
------------------------------	-------------------------------------

<i>Volumnia debuit in te officiosior esse.</i>	Volumnia ought to have been more attentive to you (but it cannot be altered now).
--	---

§ 190. (1.) The present indicative states not only what is happening at the present time, but also what happens at all times, as:

- Ego nunc scribo epistolam.* I am now writing a letter.
Dies illucescit. The day is dawning.
Deus mundum gubernat. God rules the world.

(2.) The present in historical narrative is often used in speaking of past events, to bring them more vividly before the reader or hearer.

NOTE.—In historical narrative the conjunction *dum* in the sense of "while" is generally construed with the present indicative, though the event belongs to the past, as *dum haec geruntur in Asia, bellum jam ortum erat in Italia*, while these things were going on in Asia, war had already broken out in Italy.

§ 191. The imperfect indicative describes an action either as going on, or as repeated, or as attempted in past time, as :

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>Etiam tum Athenae gloria literarum florebant.</i> | Even then Athens was flourishing in its literary glory. |
| <i>Socrates dicebat.</i> | Socrates used to say. |
| <i>Cato pro lege quae abrogabatur ita disservit.</i> | Cato spoke thus in support of the law which it was attempted to abrogate. |

NOTE.—From the first of the three meanings of the imperfect it follows that it is the tense to be employed in describing past states or conditions in contrast to *historical events*, as : *ea gens erat validissima totius Galliae*, that nation was the most powerful in all Gaul; *præ lacrimis loqui non poterat*, he was unable to speak for tears.

§ 192. The future simply states that which is to take place in time to come, as :

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Cras ad te veniam.</i> | To-morrow I shall come to you. |
| <i>Hostes urbem aggredientur.</i> | The enemies will attack the city. |

NOTE.—The Latin is more exact in the use of the future than the English, for we often use the present where future time is meant, as: if we follow nature as our guide, *si sequemur naturam ducem*, the writer speaking of what will happen if (in future) we follow nature.

§ 193. (1.) The perfect indicative has two distinct meanings ; first, it simply states an historical fact as a point in the past, like the Greek aorist, as :

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Romulus condidit urbem.</i> | Romulus built the city. |
| <i>Hannibal Romanos superavit.</i> | Hannibal overpowered the Romans. |

Secondly, it states a past event with reference to its present result, and in this sense it is the same as the English perfect, and may be called the *present perfect*.

Pater jam venit.

The father has already arrived.

Scripti epistolam.

I have written the letter (it is now finished).

Fuitus Troes, fuit Ilium.

We Trojans have been, Troy has been (it is now no longer).

(2.) The perfect indicative is generally used after the conjunctions *postquam* (after), *ut*, *ubi* (when), *simul*, *simul ac* or *atque*, *ut primum*, *quum primum* (as soon as), where in English we commonly use the pluperfect, as:

Postquam nuntiatum est hostes appropinquare, castra movit.

After it had been announced that the enemy was approaching, he moved his camp.

Ubi Helvetii de adventu Caesaris certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt.

When the Helvetii were or had been informed of Caesar's arrival, they sent ambassadors to him.

Ut or ubi equitatum suum pulsum vidi, acie excessit.

When he saw his cavalry was beaten, he withdrew from the battle.

Simul ac hostes conspexerunt, terga vertere coeperunt.

As soon as they perceived the enemy, they began to turn their backs.

§ 194. The pluperfect indicative states an action which had already taken place when another commenced, as :

Turris jam corruerat, quum arices ad murum admovebatur. The tower had already fallen, when the battering ram was moved towards the wall.

§ 195. The future perfect indicates that something will have taken place in future, when some other action will take place, as :

Romam quum venero, ad te scribam. When I shall have arrived at Rome, I will write to you.

Dum tu haec leges, ego illum fortasse convenero. While you will be reading this, I shall perhaps have met him.

NOTE.—This tense requires careful attention, because in English it is rarely used, the simple future or even the present being substituted for it. Thus, in the above example, we may say: when I arrive at Rome, I will write to you.

§ 196. The indicative of any tense is used in direct questions both with and without interrogative pronouns and adverbs, as :

<i>Quis hoc fecit?</i>	Who has done this?
<i>Quid tibi vis?</i>	What do you want?
<i>Ubi heri fuisti?</i>	Where were you yesterday?
<i>Ut valet?</i>	How is he?
<i>Thrax est Gallina Syro par?</i>	Is the Thracian Gallina a match for Syrus?

When a direct question is asked without an interrogative pronoun or adverb, the interrogative character of the sentence is generally indicated by one of the particles *ne*, *num*, *utrum*, or *an*, with this distinction, that *ne*, which is appended to the first or second word of the sentence, asks a simple question without any suggestion as to whether the answer is to be yes or no; whereas a direct question introduced by *num* expects a negative answer, as :

<i>Audistine eum loquentem?</i>	Have you heard him speaking?
<i>Num negare audes?</i>	Do you dare to deny it?
<i>Nonne vides?</i>	Do you not see?
<i>Canis nonne similis est lupo?</i>	Does a dog not resemble a wolf?
<i>Utrum—an</i> is used in double or alternative questions, as:	

Utrum matrem an patrem pluri facies. Do you esteem your mother or your father more highly?

NOTE.—The usual mode of putting a double or alternative question is to introduce the first part by *utrum* (which of the two?) and the second by *an*; but sometimes the first part has *ne* instead of *utrum*, or no particle at all, while the second is almost invariably introduced by *an*, and but rarely by *ne*.

CHAPTER XLIII.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD AND ITS TENSES.

§ 197. The subjunctive has only four tenses, the present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect, but no future nor future perfect.

In their meaning, the tenses of the subjunctive differ in some respects from those of the indicative.

§ 198. The subjunctive mostly occurs in subordinate or dependent clauses, and the tenses of such clauses are determined by the tenses of the principal or leading clause. The rule respecting this sequence of tenses (*consecutio temporum*) is: the tenses denoting present time (present and present perfect) must be succeeded by the subjunctive of tenses belonging to the same time, and the tenses denoting past time (the imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect) must be succeeded by the subjunctive of the imperfect or pluperfect—e.g.:

Quaero (I ask) *quid facias* or I ask what you are doing or what *quid feceris*. you have done.

Quaesivi (I have asked) *quid facias* or *quid feceris*. I have asked what you are doing or have done.

Quaerebam (I was asking) { *quid faceres* or *quid fecisses*, what
Quaesivi (I asked) { *quid feceris*, what
Quaesiveram (I had asked) { you did or had done.

NOTE.—The historical present, which represents the historical perfect, may be followed either by a present or past tense, as: *Ubii legatos ad Caesarem mittunt qui doceant*, the Ubii send ambassadors to Caesar to inform him; *Athenioses oreant deorum imperatores, qui praecessent*, the Athenians appoint ten generals to be at the head; *Caesar cognoscit quid hostes fecerint* or *fecissent*, Caesar learns what the enemy has or had done.

§ 199. The subjunctive in hypothetical sentences.—An hypothetical or conditional sentence consists of two parts, the one which contains the supposition and is called the *protasis*, and the one which contains the conclusion or inference, and is called the *apodosis*. These two parts generally stand to each other in such a relation that the tense of the verb in the protasis determines that of the apodosis.

The protasis is introduced by one of the conjunctions *si, nisi, ni, etsi, etiamsi, quod si, si non, modo,* and *dummodo* (if only).

Respecting the indicative in hypothetical sentences, see § 188.

NOTE 1.—It often happens in all languages that the apodosis alone is expressed, the protasis being left to be supplied by the mind, as: *illo tempore aliter sensisses*, at that time you would have felt otherwise, viz., if you had known it, or some similar phrase; *id ego non facerem*, I should not do this—viz., if I were in your place.

NOTE 2.—The substance of a protasis is sometimes expressed by a single word, a participle, or an ablative absolute, as: *mori nemo sapiens miserum dicerit*, no one, if he be wise, will say that to die is miserable; *his pulsis quomodo in hac urbe esse possim?* how could I live in this city if these men are expelled?

§ 200. If a supposition is put in such a manner that it is conceived as only possible or probable, both the protasis and the apodosis have the verb in the present or perfect subjunctive, as :

Dies deficiat, si velim numerare, quibus bonis male evenerit. The day would not be long enough, if I wished to enumerate the good men who have been unfortunate.

Si id acciderit, simus armati. If that should happen let us be armed.

Pro patria quis bonus dubitat mortem oppetere, si ei sit profuturus? What good man would hesitate to die for his country, if (thereby) he were to benefit it?

Si gladium quis apud te sana mente deposuerit, repeatat insaniens, reddere peccatum sit. If any one had while in a sound mind deposited with you a sword, and claimed it back while insane, to give it back would be a wrong act.

Si scieris aspidem occulite latere uspiam improbe feceris, nisi monueris alterum ne assideat. If you had found out that an asp is lying concealed somewhere, you would be acting wrongly if you did not warn another man not to sit there.

§ 201. If a supposition is put in such a manner as to intimate that it is not, or was not true, and that, therefore, the conclusion also does not, or did not take place, the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis, as :

Si id crederes, errares. If you believed this you would be mistaken.

Si id credidisses, errasses. If you had believed this, you would have been mistaken.

Si provincia loqui posset, hac voce uteretur. If the province could speak, it would use these words.

Pluribus verbis ad te scriberem, si res verba desideraret. I should write to you in more words, if the affair required words.

Si ibi te esse scissem, ad te ipse venissim. If I had known you to be there, I should myself have come to you.

Si bis bina quod essent didicisse, certe haec non diceret. If he had learned how much twice two is, he would certainly not say this.

NOTE.—It is obvious that in these examples the imperfect subjunctive refers to present time, and that the pluperfect has the meaning simply of a past tense.

§ 202. The Subjunctive as a potential mood.—The subjunctive as a potential mood expresses that something appears to the speaker as possible or probable. The present and perfect refer to present time, and the imperfect to the past, as:

<i>Dicat or dixerit quiespiam.</i>	Some one may say.
<i>Diceret quiespiam.</i>	Some one may have said.
<i>Vix fortasse videatur.</i>	It may perhaps scarcely seem.
<i>Fortasse dixerit quiespiam.</i>	Some one may perhaps say.
<i>Quis hoc non dederis?</i>	Who would not grant this?
<i>Quis tantum bellum arbitraretur ab uno imperatore confici posse?</i>	Who would have believed that so great a war could be brought to an end by one general?
<i>Hannibal, quod minime quis crederet, partem milium di- misit.</i>	Hannibal dismissed a part of his soldiers, a thing which no one could have believed at all.

NOTE.—The potential subjunctive is also used to express a statement with a certain degree of reserve or modesty. This is the case especially with *velim*, *nolim*, *malim*, as: *ego quaerendum censem*, I am inclined to think that it ought to be asked; *ego hanc paulo hunc animum malim*, *quam corum omnia fortunas*, I am inclined to prefer not a little this spirit to the fortunes of all of them.

§ 203. The subjunctive as an imperative and optative expresses a wish or a command in a milder form than the imperative.

<i>Valeant cives mei, sint beati, stet haec urbs praeclara.</i>	Let my fellow-citizens be strong, let them be happy, let this glorious city flourish.
<i>Sed reprimam me.</i>	But let me repress myself.
<i>Amenus patriam, pereamus senatu, consulamus bonie.</i>	Let us love our country, let us obey the senate, let us take care of the good men.
<i>Quidquid agis, prudenter agas.</i>	Whatever you do, do with prudence.
<i>Isto bono utare, dum adsit.</i>	Use that advantage as long as it is before you.

The imperfect and pluperfect refer to the past, and intimate that something ought to have been done, as :

<i>Pateretur.</i>	He ought to have tolerated it.
<i>Imitatus essem ipsum illum Vo- conium.</i>	You ought to have imitated that very Voconius.
<i>Frumentum ne emisses.</i>	You ought not to have bought the corn.

NOTE.—When the command is negative, *ne* is generally employed, as: *donis impiorum ne placare audeant deos*, let not the impious venture to appease the gods with presents; *ne me tetigeris*, do not touch me; *ne transieris Iberum*, do not cross the Iberus. Compare § 204.

§ 204. A wish expressed by the present or perfect subjunctive (optative) suggests that the wish may be fulfilled, but if expressed by the imperfect or pluperfect it is intimated that the wish cannot be realised. The force of the wish is often increased by the addition of *utinam* (would that), as :

<i>Dii prohibeant a vobis impias mentes.</i>	May the gods keep impious dis- positions from you.
<i>Vellem adesse posset Panaetius.</i>	I wish Panaetius could be pre- sent.
<i>Utinam illum diem videam.</i>	Oh, that I may see that day.
<i>Utinam suspicionem vitare po- tuisse.</i>	Would that you had been able to avoid the suspicion.

§ 205.—The subjunctive as a concessive mood expresses that something is conceded or granted, and is used both with and without the conjunction *ut*; if the concession is negative, *ne* must be used. Present time is indicated by the present, and the past by the perfect—e.g. :

<i>Naturam expellas furca, tamen usque recurret.</i>	Granting that you drive out na- ture with a pitchfork, still it will always come back.
<i>Ut desint vires, tamen est laud- anda voluntas.</i>	Granting that the strength is wanting, yet the goodwill de- serves praise.
<i>Ne sit summum malum dolor.</i>	Granting that pain is not the greatest evil.
<i>Fuerint cupidi, fuerint irati.</i>	Granting that they were greedy, granting that they were angry.

NOTE.—A concession expressed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive intimates that what is conceded is not true, as: *ut rationem Plato nullam afferret*, granting that Plato brought forward no reason; *vicissent improbos boni*, supposing or granting the good had conquered the wicked.

§ 206. The subjunctive is used in direct doubtful questions—that is, questions which indicate a state of perplexity, as :

<i>Quid faciam?</i>	What am I to do ?
<i>Quid facerem?</i>	What was I to do ? or what could I do ?
<i>Quo me nunc vertam?</i>	In what direction am I to turn now ?
<i>Quid hoc homine faciat?</i>	What are you to do with this man ?
<i>Hoc quis ferre possit?</i>	Who could bear this ?
<i>Putaremne id unquam accidere posse?</i>	Could I have believed that this would ever happen ?
<i>Tibi inimicus cur esset?</i>	Why should he have been your enemy ?

§ 207. The subjunctive is used in all indirect questions—that is, in all questions depending upon some verb of asking, saying, seeing, knowing, and the like. These questions are introduced by the same interrogative pronouns and particles as direct questions. The tense of the verb depends upon that of the verb in the principal clause, according to the general rule about the sequence of the tenses (§ 198), as :

<i>Intelligo quid velit.</i>	I see what he wants.
<i>Memini quid mihi suaseris.</i>	I remember what you have advised me.
<i>Non satis videre possum quid velint.</i>	I cannot see clearly what they wish.
<i>Epaminondas quæsivit salvus esse clipeus.</i>	Epaminondas asked if his shield was safe.
<i>Numquid vellem rogavit.</i>	He asked me if I wished anything.
<i>Xenophonti consulenti, sequareturne Cyrus respondit Socrates.</i>	Socrates replied to Xenophon, who consulted him, whether he should follow Cyrus.

NOTE 1.—Indirect questions must be carefully distinguished from relative clauses, *dixi quid sentiam*, I have said what I think, and *dixi quod sentio*, I have said that which I think.

NOTE 2.—*Num* introducing an indirect question does not expect a negative answer. Compare § 196.

§ 208. The subjunctive is used in all subordinate sentences expressing intention or result. They are intro-

duced by the conjunctions *ut*, *uti* (in order that, so that), *quo* (in order that thereby), *ne* or *ut ne* (lest, in order that not), *ut non* (so that not), *quin*, *quominus* (that not) —e.g.:

<i>Themistocles serum misit ut (or qui) nuntiaret.</i>	Themistocles sent a slave to announce.
<i>Arboribus Italia consita est, ut tota pomarium videatur.</i>	Italy is covered with trees, so that the whole seems to be an orchard.
<i>Ager aratur, quo meliores foetus possit edere.</i>	The field is ploughed, in order that thereby it may produce better fruit.
<i>Nolo esse laudator, ne videar adulator.</i>	I do not wish to praise, lest I should seem to flatter.
<i>Verres Siliciam ita vexavit, ut restituì non possit.</i>	Verres has tortured Sicily in such a manner that it cannot recover.
<i>Te infirmitas valetudinis tenuit, quominus ad ludos venires.</i>	The weakness of your health prevented your coming to the games.
<i>Vix me contineo, quin aggrediar illum.</i>	I scarcely restrain myself so as not to attack him.

NOTE 1.—*Ut* with the subjunctive expresses either an intention (in order that), or a result (so that), or a concession (granting that). The *ut* is often omitted, especially after *licet*, *oportet*, *necessæ est*, *fac*, and also after *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *placor*, and *cupo*, as: *licet taceas*, you may be silent, although you are silent; *quid vis faciam?* what do you wish that I should do? *fac venias*, take care to come, or mind you come.

Ut is further used after expressions signifying in general that something is or happens, such as: *fit*, *accidit*, *contingit*, *evenit* (it happens), *futurum est*, *usu venit*, *sequitur*, *restat* or *reliquum est*, *supereat*, *proximum est*, and the like.

NOTE 2.—*Ne* expresses a negative intention, whereas *ut non* introduces negative result or consequence, as: *hoc tibi nuntiavi, ne ignorares*, I reported this to you, that you might not be ignorant; but *Attici quies tantopere Caesar fuit grata, ut victor huius molestus non fuerit*, the fact that Atticus remained quiet, was so agreeable to Caesar that as conqueror he did not trouble him.

Ne is further used after verbs of fearing, when the wish is intimated that the thing may not happen, as: *vereor ne veniat*, I am afraid he will come; whereas *vereor ut veniat* means I fear he will not come, implying the wish that he may come.

NOTE 3.—*Quin*, a compound of *qui* and *non*, is used only after negative sentences, or such as imply a negative, as: *nihil est quod non (quin) possit depravari*, there is nothing that cannot be deteriorated; *nullus est cibus tam gravis, quin concoquatur*, no food is so heavy that it cannot be digested; *non erat dubium quin Helvetii plurimum pos-*

sent, there was no doubt that the Helvetii were most powerful; *sic me contingo quin illum aggrediar*, I can scarcely refrain from attacking him. *Quis* is also used after verbs implying prevention, opposition, omission, and the like, because they imply a negative. *Dubito* (I doubt), when not accompanied by a negative, is generally followed by a question with *num*, as *dubito num res ita se habent*, I doubt whether the matter is so. *Non dubito*, in the sense of "I doubt not," is generally followed by *quis*, and in that of "I do not hesitate," by the infinitive.

NOTE 4.—*Quominus*, a compound of *quo* and *minus*—that is, *ut eo minus*, in order that thereby less or not—is used after verbs of hindering and preventing, such as *impedio*, *prohibeo*, *officio*, *obsto*, *obeisto*, *deterreo*—e.g., *non recusabo quominus omnes mea scripta legenti*, I have no objection to all men reading my works; *hiems adhuc prohibuit*, *quominus de te certum aliquid haberemus*, winter has hitherto prevented us from having any definite news about you.

NOTE 5.—*Quo*—that is, *ut eo*, "in order that thereby"—denotes intention, and is commonly followed by a comparative, as: *ager aratur*, *quo meliores foetus possit edere*; *legem brevem esse oportet quo facilius teneatur*, a law must be brief, in order that it may be more easily remembered.

§ 209. Subordinate clauses introduced by the casual conjunctions *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quando*, generally have the verb in the indicative, provided they state the writer's or speaker's actual reason; but when he only quotes a reason assigned by others without expressing his own assent or dissent, the subjunctive must be used, as:

Aristides nonne ob eam causam expulsus est patria, quod praeter modum justus esset? Was not Aristides expelled from his country because he was (said to be) unusually just?

Where *justus erat* would have expressed the writer's own reason.

Athenienses decem praetores, quod inseparatos reliquissent eos, quos e mari propter vim tempestatis excipere non potuerint, innocentes necarunt.

Romani, quia consules rem prospera gererent, minus his cladibus commovebantur.

The Athenians put ten innocent generals to death, because they had left unburied those whom, on account of the violence of a storm, they had been unable to pick up.

The Romans were less distressed by these defeats, because (as they thought) the consuls were carrying on the war successfully.

§ 210. *Quum* or *cum*, a temporal and causal conjunction, has three distinct meanings—viz., (1) when, (2) as or

since (because), and (3) although, the last implying a concession. With the second and third meaning it always takes the subjunctive. Whenever *quum* is equivalent to "at the time when"—that is, when it purely indicates time—it is followed by the indicative; but when in historical narrative two events may be regarded as standing to each other in the relation of cause and effect—that is, when one event could not well have taken place without the other—*quum* is followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, as :

<i>Animus nec quum adest nec quum discedit appetet.</i>	The soul is neither seen when (at the time when) it is present nor when it departs.
<i>Sex libros de re publica tum scripsimus, quum gubernac- ula rei publicae tenebamus.</i>	We wrote the six books on the republic at the time, when we were at the helm of the re- public.
<i>Lysander quum vellet Lycuryi leges commutare, Apollinis est prohibitus religione.</i>	When Lysander wished to change the laws of Lycurgus, he was prevented by religious fear of Apollo.
<i>Agesilaus quum ex Aegypto re- verteretur, venissetque in por- tum, in morbum impiciatus decessit.</i>	When Agesilaus returned from Egypt and had entered the harbour, he was seized by an illness and died.
<i>Caesari quum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci.</i>	When it had been reported to Ceasar, that they were at- tempting to march through our province, he hastens to start from the city.
<i>Socrates quum posset educi e custodia, noluit.</i>	Although Socrates could be taken out of prison, he would not.

NOTE.—*Quum*, when followed by *tum*, frequently may be rendered by "both—and," or by "on the one hand;" while *tum* signifies "on the other hand," or "in general" and "in particular." *Quum* in this case has no influence upon the mood of the verb, as *Pausanias Colonas se contulerat; ibi consilia quum patriae tum sibi inimica capiebat*, Pausanias had betaken himself to Colonæ; he was forming plans dangerous both to his country and to himself.

§ 211. The conjunctions *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, in the sense of "until," are construed with the indicative, if the event introduced by them really happened; but if the event is conceived only as possible, or as one only wished for or likely to happen, the subjunctive is used, as :

Milo adfuit, donec senatus dimissus est. Milo was present until the senate broke up.

Irratis substrahendi sunt ii, in quos impetum conantur facere, dum se ipsi colligant. From angry persons those whom they attempt to attack ought to be withdrawn, until they recover themselves (which is only possible or desirable, but not a fact).

NOTE.—Respecting *dum* (while) in historical narrative, see § 190, Note.

§ 212. The concessive conjunctions *quamvis*, *licet* (although), *quantumvis* and *quamlibet* (although) are generally construed with the subjunctive, while *quamquam* takes the indicative, as :

Quamvis Elysios miretur Graecia Although Greece admires the *Elysian plains*.

Licet mihi invius sit, tamen cum non persecuar. Although he is hateful to me, I will not prosecute him.

Quamquam satis cautum erat de Saguntinis. Although sufficient precaution had been taken about the Saguntines.

NOTE.—*Quamvis* is a compound of *quam* and *vis* (as much as you like); and *licet* is an impersonal verb, after which *ut* may be used. *Quamquam* is sometimes used in the adverbial sense of "however," when the speaker corrects or modifies a previous statement, and in this case it exercises no influence upon the verb.

§ 213. The conjunctions *quasi*, *velut si*, *tanquam si*, *perinde ac si*, *aeque ac si*, *non secus ac si*, all of which signify "as if," require the verb to be in the subjunctive, as they introduce a clause with the intimation that it is not a fact, but a mere conception of the mind, as :

Quid ego his testibus utor, quasi res dubia aut obscura sit? Why do I make use of these witnesses, as if the case were doubtful or obscure?

Sic cogitandum est, tamquam aliquis in pectus intimum in spicere possit. Our thoughts ought to be such, as if some one could look into our inmost heart.

§ 214. Relative clauses—that is, such as are introduced by a relative pronoun or relative adverbs (*ubi*, *unde*, *quo*, where, whence, whither)—have the verb in the indicative, when they contain a simple explanation; but when they contain the idea of cause, intention, condi-

tion, possibility, or consequence, they have the verb in the subjunctive, as :

*Cotta, qui cogitasset haec posse
in itinere accidere, nulla in re
communi saluti deerat.*

*O fortunate adolescens, qui triae
virtutis Homerum praeconem
inveneris!*

*Legatos ad senatum misit qui
auxilium peterent.*

*Nihil bonum est quod hominem
non meliorem faciat.*

*Majus gaudium fuit quam quod
homines caperent.*

Cotta, who had thought (because he had thought) that these things might happen on the march, was not wanting in anything for the common safety.

O thou fortunate young man, who hast found (because thou hast found) a Homer as the herald of thy valour!

He sent ambassadors to the senate who were (intended) to ask for help.

Nothing is good which does not (if it does not) make man better.

The joy was too great for men to apprehend it (so great that men could not).

§ 215. The adjectives *dignus* and *indignus* govern the ablative of the thing of which a person is worthy or unworthy (see § 167, note 2); but when the thing is expressed by a verb, the relative with the subjunctive is generally used, as :

*Dignus est qui laudetur.
Livianae fabulae non satis dignae sunt quae iterum legantur.*

He is worthy of being praised.
The plays of Livius are not well deserving of being read a second time.

NOTE.—Instead of the relative we sometimes find *ut* after these adjectives, and poets and late writers use the infinitive after them, as : *dignus est decipi*, he deserves to be deceived; *vina digna moveri*, wines deserving to be brought forward. What has been said here about *dignus* and *indignus* also applies to *aptus* and *idoneus* (fit), as : *persona apta quae loquatur de senectute*, a character fit to speak about old age; *fons rivo dare nomen idoneus*, a fountain fit to give its name to a stream.

§ 216. The relative takes the subjunctive when it is the correlative of *is*, *talis*, or *tantus*, and kindred expressions, as :

Non sumus ii, quibus nihil verum esse videatur.

Innocentia est affectio talis animi, quae noceat nemini.

We are not the men to whom nothing seems to be true.

Innocence is that condition of mind which hurts no one.

§ 217. When the relative refers to an indefinite subject, after the phrases *sunt* (there are persons), *non desunt* (persons are not wanting), *reperiuntur* (persons are found), *nemo est* (there is no one), *quis* or *quid est* (who or what is there), it generally has its verb in the subjunctive, as:

Sunt qui discessum animi a corpore patent esse mortem.

There are those who believe that death is the separation of the soul from the body.

Fuerunt qui crederent.

There have been persons who believed.

Qui se ulro morti afferant, facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem patienter ferant.

Persons are more easily found who, of their own accord, offer to die, than those who bear pain patiently.

NOTE.—In all cases of this kind the relative has the meaning of "of such a nature" or "of such a kind that." But when this is not the case, and when *sunt qui* simply signifies "some," the verb is in the indicative, as: *sunt quos juvai*, it delights some; *est ubi peccat*, he sometimes goes wrong; *sunt qui putant*, some persons think; *sunt multa quae nos ducunt*, many things attract us.

§ 218. The relative sometimes takes the subjunctive in historical narrative when a repeated action or occurrence is spoken of, as :

Nemo Pyrrhum, qua tulisset impetum, sustinere valuit.

No one could stand against Pyrrhus, wherever he had made the attack.

Semper habiti sunt fortissimi, qui summam imperii poteruntur.

Those have always been regarded as the bravest, who gained possession of the supreme power.

§ 219. The *oratio obliqua* is a speech quoted not in the exact form in which it was spoken, but indirectly, and is generally introduced in English by the conjunction "that." It is always dependent upon some verb of saying, answering, observing, and the like—e.g., "He said that he would come," which, in direct speech (*oratio recta*), would be, "He said, I will come."

The general rule about the construction of *oratio obliqua* is : All principal sentences are expressed by the accusative with the infinitive (*i.e.*, the subject is put in the accusative and the verb in the infinitive), and all secondary,

explanatory, or dependent clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive—e.g.:

Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristoteles ait bestiolas quasdam nasci, quae unum diem vivant.

Socrates dicebat omnes in eo quod scirent satis esse eloquentes.

The following further details must be observed:—

(a.) All imperatives of the *oratio recta* become subjunctives in the *oratio obliqua*, as :

Redditur responsum nondum tempus pugnae esse; castris se tenterent.

Nuntius ei domo venit bellum Athenienses et Boeotios indixisse Lacedaemonis, quare venire ne dubitaret.

Aristotle says that on the banks of the river Hypanis certain little animals are born which live only for a day.

Socrates used to say that all men were sufficiently eloquent on those things which they knew.

An answer was returned, that it was not yet time for a battle, that they should keep in their camp.

A messenger came to him from home (saying), that the Athenians and Boeotians had declared war against the Lacedaemonians, that therefore he should not hesitate to come.

(b.) All direct questions of the *oratio recta* become indirect questions in the *oratio obliqua*, and are therefore expressed by the subjunctive, as :

Ariovistus respondit, se prius in Galliam venisse quam populum Romanum. Quid sibi vellet? cur in suas possessiones veniret?

Ariovistus replied, that he had come into Gaul before the Roman people, (and asked) what Caesar wanted? and why he came into his possessions?

(c.) The apodosis of an hypothetical sentence is expressed in the *oratio obliqua* by the accusative with the infinitive, as :

Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit, siquid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, seee ad eum venturum fuisset.

To this embassy Ariovistus replied, that if he had wanted anything from Caesar, he would have gone to him.

§ 220. The tenses of the subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua* depend upon the tense of the verb of saying in

the leading or governing clause, and follow the rules of the sequence of tenses (see § 198), as :

<i>Socrates dicit eos qui boni sint beatos esse.</i>	Socrates says that those who are good are happy.
<i>Socrates dixit or dicebat eos qui boni essent beatos esse.</i>	Socrates said that those who were good were happy.
<i>Socrates nihil se scire dicit, nisi id ipsum; eoque praestare ceteris, quod illi quae neesciant scire se putent, ipse se nihil scire sciatur.</i>	Socrates says that he knows nothing except this very fact, and that therefore he is better than the others, because they believe to know what they do not know, but that he knows that he knows nothing.

CHAPTER XLIV.

THE IMPERATIVE.

§ 221. The imperative expresses a command, a request, or an exhortation ; it has two tenses, the present and the future. The present expresses a command in general, or one that is to be obeyed at once ; while the future imperative expresses a command that a thing shall be done in future or when an occasion shall occur ; whence it is employed in laws, contracts, wills, and the like.

<i>Catilina, perge quo coepisti, egradere ex urbe, proficiscere.</i>	Catiline, proceed to the place to which you have begun to go, quit the city, start.
<i>Justitiam cole et pietatem.</i>	Honour justice and piety.
<i>Cras petito, dabitur, nunc abi.</i>	Ack to-morrow, and it will be granted, now go away.
<i>Prius audite paucis, quod quum dixerim, si placuerit facio.</i>	First listen to a few words, and when I have spoken, you shall do it, if you please.
<i>Hominem mortuum in urbe ne se pelito neve urito.</i>	Thou shalt neither bury nor burn a dead man in the city.
<i>Nocturna sacrificia ne sunt.</i>	There shall be no nocturnal sacrifices.
<i>Salus populi suprema lex esto.</i>	The safety of the people shall be the highest law.

§ 222. Instead of the imperative, the second and third

persons of the subjunctive may be used to express an exhortation rather than a command (see § 203)—e.g.:

Valeant cives mei, sint beati, si et haec urbs praeclara mihique patria carissima. Farewell to my fellow-citizens, let them be happy, let this city, so glorious and to me most dear as my native place, flourish.

Quidquid agis, prudenter agas et respice finem. Whatever you do, do cautiously and look to the end.

The first person plural, for which the imperative has no form, is always expressed by the subjunctive, as:

Amemus patriam, pareamus senatum, consulamus bonis, praesentes fructus negligamus, posteritatis gloriae seruiamus. Let us love our country, let us obey the senate, let us take care of the good, let us disregard present enjoyments, and look to the good repute with posterity.

§ 223. A negative command, whether expressed by the imperative or by the subjunctive, takes the negative *ne*, and *non* only when it is particularly emphatic or refers only to one particular word. When there are two or more negative commands, the second is *neve* or *neu*, as in *hominem mortuum*, etc., § 221:

Tu ne cede malis. Do not give way to misfortunes.
Ne difficultia optemus. Let us not wish for difficult things.

A legibus non cedamus. Let us not depart from the laws.

NOTE.—A negative imperative is frequently expressed by a paraphrase with *noli* or *nolite* and the infinitive, as: *noli me tangere*, do not touch me; *nolite id velle quod fieri non potest*, do not wish that to be done which cannot be done.

CHAPTER XLV.

THE INFINITIVE.

§ 224. The infinitive is not a mood, but a verbal substantive of the neuter gender, simply naming the action or condition. It has only two cases, the nominative and the accusative, the other cases being supplied by the gerund. But it differs from ordinary substantives in as-

much as it governs its case as a verb, and cannot be accompanied by an attributive adjective, but only by an adverb. (Comp. § 64.)

The infinitive has three tenses, the present or imperfect tense, the perfect, and the future, as :

Legere bonos libros utile est. To read, or the reading of, good books is useful.

The perfect infinitive represents an action simply as past, and the future as one that is to come, as :

Pudet me haec dicens. I am ashamed of having said this.
Hanc rem tibi profuturam esse I believe that this thing will be
existima. useful to you.

NOTE.—Instead of the future infinitive, both in the active and in the passive, a paraphrase is often used with *fore* (i.e., *futurum esse*), *ut* and the subjunctive, as : *clamabant homines fore ut ipsi sees di immortales ulciscerentur*, men exclaimed that the immortal gods themselves would avenge themselves; *spero fore ut contingat id nobis*, I hope that this may happen to us. This paraphrase is almost invariably used after the verb *spero*, and must be employed if the verb has no supine.

§ 225. The infinitive, being used only in the nominative and accusative, is either the subject or the object of another verb, as :

<i>Dulce est desipere</i> (subject) in	It is pleasant to play the fool at
<i>loco.</i>	the right time.
<i>Accusatores malos in civitate</i>	The existence of many accusers
<i>esse</i> (subject) <i>utile est.</i>	in a city is useful.
<i>Fuge quaerere</i> (object).	Avoid inquiring.
<i>Nolo scribere</i> (object).	I will not write.

The objective infinitive is required after a great many verbs which express an incomplete idea, and must have another verb for its completion. Such verbs are—e.g., *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *cupio*, *conor*, *possum*, *audeo*, *vereor*, and many others.

The subjective infinitive, on the other hand, is frequently the subject of such impersonal verbs as *jurat*, *apparet*, *constat*, *convenit*, *decet*, *expedit*, *oportet*, *opus est*, *fas est*, *necessa est*, *fugit*, *fallit* or *praeterit* *me*; also after such expressions as *in animo est*, *pulchrum est*, *certum est*, *aequum est*, *decorum est*, etc., as :

<i>Necesse est venerari deos.</i>	It is necessary to worship the gods.
<i>Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rempublicam.</i>	The safety of the state is an advantage to all good men.
<i>Te hilari animo esse valde me juvat.</i>	It gives me great pleasure that you are of a cheerful disposition.

§ 226. When the infinitive itself has a subject, it is generally in the accusative, and of course the predicate also, as :

<i>Romanos adesse nuntiatur.</i>	It is announced that the Romans are at hand.
<i>Hoc vere dicitur parva esse ista.</i>	This is said with truth that those things are small.
<i>Traditum est Homerum caecum fuisse.</i>	It has been reported that Homer was blind.

§ 227. The nominative with the infinitive is used with the passive of the verbs of saying, thinking, believing. This is always the case with *video* (I seem), and generally with *dico* (I am said) and *puto* (I am thought), and the passive forms *fertur*, *feruntur*, *traditur*, *traduntur*, and others of a similar meaning. (Comp. § 122.)

<i>Graeci dicuntur victi esse.</i>	The Greeks are said to have been conquered.
<i>Non videmur esse victuri.</i>	We do not seem likely to conquer.
<i>Ennius in sepulcro Scipionum putatur esse constitutus e marmore.</i>	Ennius is believed to have been placed in the form of a marble statue in the tomb of the Scipios.
<i>Regnante Tarquinio in Italiam Pythagoras venisse reperitur.</i>	Pythagoras is found to have come into Italy in the reign of Tarquinius.

§ 228. The passives of the above mentioned and similar verbs are sometimes used impersonally, especially in their compound tenses, when they are intended to be emphatic. When so used they are followed by the accusative with the infinitive, which is their subject, as :

<i>Dicitur eo tempore matrem Pausaniae vixisse.</i>	It is said that at that time the mother of Pausanius was alive.
---	---

Nuntiatum est piratarum esse naves in portu. It was reported that ships of pirates were in the harbour.

Memoriae proditum est Latonam deam configuisse Delum. There is a tradition that the goddess Latona fled to Delos.

§ 229. The active of the above passive verba is followed by the accusative with the infinitive when they have a whole clause for their object, as :

Dicunt Socratem fuisse sapientissimum omnium Graecorum. They say that Socrates was the wisest of all the Greeks.
Unam esse spem salutis docent. They show that there is one hope of safety.

Thucydides Themistoclem ait Magnesiae morbo mortuum esse. Thucydides says that Themistocles died at Magnesia of an illness.

Lysander dicebat Lacedaemonem esse honestissimum domicilium senectutis. Lysander used to say that Lacedaemon was the most honourable place for old men to live in.

Scio pleroque ita scripisse. I know that most men have written so.

NOTE.—The English language also sometimes employs the objective accusative with the infinitive, as: "I know him to be an honest man," *scio eum honestum esse hominem*; "I wish them to come," "I allow him to read." But the subjective accusative with the infinitive cannot be imitated in English.

§ 230. A clause expressed by the accusative with the infinitive, like the infinitive alone, may be the subject as well as the object of another verb, as :

Militem pro patria mori (subject) honestum est. It is honourable for a soldier to die for his country.

Magna laus est unum hominem elaborare (subject) in ea scientia. It is great praise that one man exerts himself in that science.

Par est omnes omnia experiri (subject). It is meet that all men should try all things.

§ 231. The objective accusative with the infinitive is further used after the verbs *jubeo, veto, patior, sino, prohibeo, impedio, cogo, and assuefacio*, as :

Eurystheus Herculem leonem Nemeacum interficere jussit. Eurystheus ordered Heracles to kill the Nemean lion.

Legatos Athenas miserunt qui id fieri vetarent. They sent ambassadors to Athens to forbid the doing of this.

Augures dictatorem prohibuerunt comitia perficere.

The Augurs prevented the Dictator from holding the comitia to the end.

Me impedit pudor haec exquirere.

Shame prevents my searching into these things.

Urbes ad officium redire coegerunt.

He compelled the towns to return to their duty.

§ 232. Verbs expressing a wish or willingness, as *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *cupio*, may be construed either with the nominative or the accusative with the infinitive, provided the verb of wishing has the same subject as the infinitive. But when the governing verb and the infinitive have different subjects, the accusative with the infinitive must be used, as :

Cupio clementem esse, or cupio me clementem esse. I wish to be lenient.

Sapiens fieri volo or sapiens me fieri volo. I wish to become wise.

Nolo consul fieri or nolo me consulem fieri. I do not wish to be made consul.

Te tua frui virtute cupimus. We desire you to reap the benefit of your virtue.

Lycurgus corpora juvenum firmari labore voluit. Lycurgus wished the bodies of the youths to be strengthened by labour.

§ 233. An objective accusative with the infinitive is often used after verbs of rejoicing, wondering, and such as express anxiety or discontent, as *gaudeo*, *laetor*, *glorior*, *doleo*, *angor*, *solllicitor*, *indignor*, *queror*, *miror*, *admiror*, *aegre* and *moleste fero*; but it is equally common to find them followed by the conjunction *quod* either with the indicative or the subjunctive, as :

Gaudeo te id mihi suadere or quod id mihi suades. I am glad that you give me this advice.

Nihil me magis. sollicitabat quam me non ridere tecum or quam quod non riderem tecum. Nothing vexed me more than that I did not laugh with you.

Laetor quod Gaius incolumis vivit in urbe or Gaium incolumen vivere in urbe. I rejoice that Gaius lives in the city unscathed.

§ 234. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes used in exclamations or questions expressing wonder, astonishment, or indignation, as :

Mene incepto desistere victimam? Am I to give up my undertaking
as conquered?

Adeone hominem esse infelicem! That any man should be so un-
happy as I am!

Te in tantas aerumnas incidisse! That you should have fallen into
such troubles!

§ 235. The present infinitive is often used in animated narratives, or rather descriptions, instead of the imperfect indicative. This infinitive is called the historical or better the descriptive infinitive; its subject is always in the nominative—e.g.:

<i>Verres minitari absenti Dio-</i>	Verres threatened the absent
<i>doro, vociferari palam, lacri-</i>	Diodorus, shouted publicly,
<i>mas via interdum tenere.</i>	and sometimes scarcely kept from weeping.

CHAPTER XLVI.

THE GERUND AND THE GERUNDIVE.

§ 236. The gerund, like the infinitive, is a verbal substantive; it has four cases, the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative, and governs the same case as its verb. The nominative is supplied by the infinitive; and the accusative is used only when governed by a preposition; in all other cases the infinitive supplies the accusative. (Comp. § 224.)

The following table shows the declension of a verb by examples :—

N. *Scribere difficile est*, writing or to write is difficult.

G. *Arte scribendi*, the art of writing.

D. *Puer operam dat scribendo*, the boy studies writing.

A. { *Puer cupit scribere*, the boy wishes to write.

Ab. *Puer paratus est ad scribendum*, the boy is ready to write.

Ab. *Puer fatigatus est scribendo*, the boy is tired from writing.

§ 237. The gerundive is a passive participle, generally implying the idea of necessity or possibility, and has the

agent by whom the action is to be done in the dative instead of the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*, as :

Pater amandus est.

The father is to be loved, must be loved, or deserves to be loved.

Ut religio propaganda est, sic superstitionis stirpes omnes ejiciendae.

As religion deserves to be propagated, so all the roots of superstition ought to be extirpated.

Miki scribendum est.

Writing must be done by me, or I must write.

Bellum miki gerendum est.

War must be carried on by me. Caesar had to do all things at one and the same time.

Caesar omnia uno tempore erant agenda.

It is scarcely to be believed.

Vix credendum est.

NOTE.—As intransitive verbs can only have an impersonal passive, their gerundive can occur only in the neuter gender, as : *currendum est*, there must be running, or they must run ; *pugnandum erat*, there was a necessity for fighting, or they had to fight.

§ 238. The gerund of a transitive verb should have its object in the accusative, but it is generally changed into the gerundive and takes its object along with it, agreeing with it as an ordinary adjective, as :

Consilium urbis condendae (for The plan of founding a city.
urbem condendi).

Consul placandis dii (for *placando deos*) *operam dat.* The consul devotes himself to appeasing the gods.

Comitia consulibus creandis (for *comitium* for electing the consules *creando*).

NOTE.—When the object of a gerund is a neuter adjective or pronoun, it remains in the accusative, as : *studium aliquid agendi* (not *alicuius*), the desire to do something ; *cupiditas plura habendi* (not *plurium habendorum*), the eagerness to have more,

CHAPTER XLVII.

THE SUPINE.

§ 239. The supine is a verbal substantive of the fourth declension, possessing only two cases, the accusative and the ablative.

The supine in *um* denotes a purpose, and is used only after verbs of motion, such as *ire*, *venire*, and *mittere*, and may have an object in the accusative, as :

<i>Cubitum eo.</i>	I go to lie down or to bed.
<i>Legati venerunt pacem petitum.</i>	Ambassadors came to sue for peace.
<i>Legati venerunt questum injurias et ex foedere res repetitum.</i>	Ambassadors came to complain of acts of injustice, and to demand reparation according to the treaty.

NOTE.—As this supine denotes a purpose, its force may also be expressed by the subjunctive and otherwise, as: *legati venerunt qui ut pacem peterent, ad pacem petendam, or pacem petituri.*

§ 240. The supine in *u* is used only after such adjectives as *facilis, difficilis, credibilis, incredibilis, mirabilis, jucundus, honestus, fas, nefas, and opus est*, and denotes the object in regard to which these qualities are attributed to a thing. The supines in *u* most commonly used are *dictu, factu, auditu, visu, cognitu, aditu, and transitu*—e.g. :

<i>Facile, incredibile dictu.</i>	Easy, incredible to say.
<i>Jucundum auditu.</i>	Pleasant to hear.
<i>Nefas est dictu.</i>	It is sinful to say.
<i>Uva peracerba gustatu.</i>	A grape very bitter to taste.
<i>Mirabile dictu.</i>	Wonderful to say.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

THE PARTICIPLES.

§ 241. Participles are in form adjectives, but express time and govern the case of the verbs from which they are formed.

There are two participles in the active—the present participle, which represents an action as going on at any time, present, past or future; and the future participle, which represents an action as about or likely to take place, or as intended.

In the passive also there are two participles—the past participle and the gerundive. The past participle denotes an action completed at the time spoken of. Respecting the gerundive, see § 237

Deponent verbs have all these four participles, as : *hortans, hortatus, hortaturus, and hortandus.*

NOTE.—The following are the only active verbs that have a past participle with an active meaning, though the form is passive :

<i>Adeo</i> , I dare.	<i>aene</i> , having dared.
<i>Caeno</i> , I dine.	<i>caenatus</i> , having dined.
<i>Fido</i> , I trust.	<i>fissus</i> , having trusted or trusting.
<i>Gaudio</i> , I rejoice.	<i>gavissus</i> , having rejoiced or rejoicing.
<i>Juro</i> , I swear.	<i>juratus</i> , having sworn.
<i>Nubo</i> , I marry.	<i>nupta</i> , having been or being married to.
<i>Odi</i> , I hate.	<i>osus</i> , having hated or hating.
<i>Prandeo</i> , I breakfast.	<i>pransus</i> , having breakfasted.
<i>Soleo</i> , I am wont.	<i>solutus</i> , having been wont or being wont.

§ 242. As active verbs generally have no past participle, the deficiency is supplied in translating either by changing the sentence into the passive, or by using a paraphrase with some conjunction, as :

Urbem captam militibus diripendam tradidit, or *quum urbem cepisset eam diripiebant*. Having taken the city he gave it up to the soldiers to be plundered.

Compare § 148, note.

§ 243. The Latin language, where possible, avoids the use of verbal substantives, and often employs participles where in English substantives are used, as :

<i>Post urbem conditam.</i>	After the foundation of the city.
<i>Ab urbe condita.</i>	From the foundation of the city.
<i>Post and ante Christum natum.</i>	After, before the birth of Christ.
<i>Post reges expulsoe.</i>	After the expulsion of the kings.
<i>Cicerone consule.</i>	In the consulship of Cicero.
<i>Omne malum nascens facile operi primitur.</i>	Every evil is easily crushed in the beginning.

§ 244. A subordinate clause, expressing time, cause, manner, instrument, or any of the ideas commonly expressed by the ablative, provided its subject is different from that of the leading clause, is expressed by the ablative absolute—that is, the conjunction is omitted, the subject is put in the ablative, and the verb, changed into a suitable participle, is made to agree with the subject in gender, number, and case, as :

Sole stante terra vertitur.

While the sun is standing still,
the earth turns round.

*Hae res gestae sunt Romulo
regnante.*

These things were done when
Romulus reigned.

*Reluctante natura irritus labor
est.*

Exertion is useless when nature
is against it.

*Mucius Porsennam interficere,
proposita sibi morte, conatus
est.*

Mucius attempted to kill Por-
senna, although death stared
him in the face.

Hoste victa.

When the enemy was conquered.

Classe illa amissa.

When that fleet was lost, or if
that fleet should be lost.

NOTE 1.—In English the nominative absolute answers to the Latin
abative absolute, but it is less extensively used.

NOTE 2.—An ablative absolute ought to consist of a noun and a
participle; but a verbal substantive or an adjective often takes the
place of the participle, as: *Romulo regre*, when Romulus was king; *rem auctore Aristide repudieverserunt*, they rejected the affair on the
advice of Aristides; *bellum Gallicum Caesare imperato gestum est*, the Gallic war was carried on under the command of Caesar; *cœrius
parte aestatis reliqua*, as only a short part of the summer remained; *civibus salvo*, while the citizens were safe; *cœlo aere*, while sky was
bright; *patre vivo*, while the father was alive; *me invito*, I being
unwilling, or against my will.

NOTE 3.—As there is no past participle in the active, it frequently
becomes necessary to change the clause into the passive, as: Ariovis-
tus having heard of Caesar's arrival, sent ambassadors to him, *cognitis
Caesaris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum misit*; Caius Sempronius
having conducted his own defence, was condemned, *Caius Sempronius
causa ipse pro se dicta damnatus est*.

A P P E N D I X.

I.

ROMAN NAMES.

1. A Roman citizen generally had three names, as *Publius Vergilius Maro, Quintus Horatius Flaccus*. The first (*praenomen*) of the three corresponds to our Christian name, and distinguishes a person from other members of the same family; the third (*cognomen*) is the family name; and the middle, generally ending in *ius* (*nomen gentilicium* or simply *nomen*), describes the *gens* or clan to which a person belongs.
2. In addition to these, a person might have a fourth name or *agnomen* as an honorary distinction on account of some military exploit or conquest, as *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus*, who destroyed Carthage, and added its territory to the dominions of Rome under the name of Africa.

3. Women were designated simply by the feminine form of the gentile name, such as *Julia, Terentia, Fulvia, Sempronia, Cornelia*.

4. In writing the *praenomina*, the Romans generally used only the initials, as *M. Tullius Cicero*, i.e., *Marcus Tullius Cicero*. The following is a list of Roman *praenomina* in alphabetical order:—

A. = Aulus.	Mam. = Mamerlus.
Ap. or App. = Appius.	N. or Num. = Numerius.
C. or G. = Caius or Gaius.	P. = Publius.
Cn. or Gn. = Cnaeus or Gnaeus.	Q. or Qu. = Quintus.
D. = Decimus.	S. or Sex. = Sextus.
K. = Kaeso.	Ser. = Servius.
L. = Lucius.	Sp. = Spurius.
M. = Marcus.	T. = Titus.
M'. = Manius.	Ti. = Tiberius.

II.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

1. The Romans did not, as we do, reckon the days of the month straight on from the first to the last, but according to three principal days which they called the *Kalendae*, the *Nonae*, and the *Idus*. The *Kalendae* is the 1st day of every month, the *Nonae* the 5th, and the *Idus* the 13th; but in the months of March, May, July, and October the *Nonae* fall on the 7th and the *Idus* on the 15th.

2. All the other days of a month are stated by counting backwards from any of the three principal days, but in such a manner as to include the day from which we start (the *terminus a quo*). Hence, e.g., the last day of the month of August will be expressed by *pridie (ante) Kalendas Septembres*; and the day before that by *tertio (ante) Kalendas Septembres*, and so on back to the *Ides*, and thence again to the *Nones*. Hence on the day before the *Ides* will be *pridie (ante) Idus*, and the day before that *tertio (ante) Idus*, and so also *pridie (ante) Nonas*, and *tertio or quarto (ante) Nonas*, etc.

3. In regard to the *Kalendae* which are an extra day beyond the current month, a second day must be added to the number of days in the current month, whence, e.g., *tertio (ante) Kalendas Iulias* is the 29th of June.

4. When a date is mentioned in answer to the question *When?* it is expressed, as usual, by the ablative of an ordinal numeral and the preposition *ante*, as *die tertio ante Kalendas Iulias*. But both the word *die* and *ante* are commonly omitted, as *tertio Kalendas*, or the preposition is transposed and placed before the numeral, but leaving the accusative *Kalendas* unaltered, as *ante diem tertium Kalendas Iulias*. In this case the words *ante diem* are treated as one indeclinable substantive, and may be preceded by a second preposition, as *in ante diem tertium Kalendas Iulias*, for the third day before the *Kalends* of July; *ex ante diem quintum Idus Octobres*, beginning from the fifth day before the *Ides* of October.

5. In leap years, the month of February has one day more, and this intercalary day is inserted after the 23rd of February—that is, on the 6th day before the *Kalends* of March. Hence the leap year itself was called *bis sextus*, the 23rd and 24th being both *sextus ante Kalendas Martias*.

The following table contains the complete Calendar of an ordinary year, from which it will not be difficult to identify a Roman date with our own :

CALENDARIUM.

Our days of the Month.	March, May, July, October, have 31 days.	January, August, December, have 31 days.		April, June, September, November, have 30 days.	February has 28 days, and in Leap Year 29.	
		KALENDA.	KALENDA.		KALENDA.	KALENDA.
1.	KALENDA.	IV.	{ ante Nones. ante Nones.	IV.	{ ante Nones. ante Nones.	KALENDA.
2.	VI.	V.	Pridie Nona.	V.	Pridie Nona.	VII.
3.	ante Nones.	III.	Nona.	III.	ante Nones.	VIII.
4.	IV.	II.	Pridie Nona.	II.	Pridie Nona.	VII.
5.	V.	I.	Nona.	I.	Nona.	VI.
6.	ante Nones.	VII.	Pridie Nona.	VII.	ante Idus.	V.
7.	VI.	VIII.	Nona.	VIII.	ante Idus.	IV.
8.	ante Idus.	VII.	Pridie Nona.	VII.	ante Idus.	III.
9.	VII.	VI.	Nona.	VI.	Pridie Idus.	II.
10.	VI.	V.	Pridie Idus.	V.	Idibus.	IV.
11.	V.	IV.	Idibus.	IV.	Pridie Idus.	III.
12.	IV.	III.	Idibus.	III.	Idibus.	XIX.
13.	III.	Pridie Idus.	Idibus.	Pridie Idus.	Idibus.	XVII.
14.	Pridie Idus.	II.	Idibus.	II.	Idibus.	XV.
15.	Idibus.	I.	Idibus.	I.	Idibus.	XIV.
16.	Idibus.	VII.	XVII.	XVII.	XVII.	XIII.
17.	XVI.	XV.	XV.	XV.	XV.	XII.
18.	XV.	XIV.	XIV.	XIV.	XIV.	XI.
19.	XIV.	XIII.	XIII.	XIII.	XIII.	X.
20.	XIII.	XII.	XII.	XII.	XII.	X.
21.	XII.	XI.	XI.	XI.	XI.	X.
22.	XI.	X.	X.	X.	X.	X.
23.	X.	IX.	IX.	IX.	IX.	X.
24.	IX.	VIII.	VIII.	VIII.	VIII.	VII.
25.	VIII.	VII.	VII.	VII.	VII.	VI.
26.	VII.	VI.	VI.	VI.	VI.	V.
27.	VI.	V.	V.	V.	V.	IV.
28.	V.	IV.	IV.	IV.	IV.	III.
29.	IV.	III.	III.	III.	III.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).
30.	III.	II.	II.	II.	II.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).
31.	II.	I.	I.	I.	I.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

In Post 8vo, price 2s. 6d.

GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

In Post 8vo, price 2s. 6d.

HISTORY OF LATIN LITERATURE.

In Post 8vo, price 3s. 6d.

C. JULII CÆSARIS

COMMENTARII DE BELLO GALlico,

WITH INTRODUCTION, EXAMINATION QUESTIONS, COPIOUS NOTES,
VOCABULARY, MAPS, PLANS, AND A GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX.

In Extra Fcap. 8vo, price 2s.

HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

WITH QUESTIONS AND NOTES ON CONTEMPORARY EVENTS.

In Extra Fcap. 8vo, price 1s. 6d.

HISTORY OF GREECE.

In Extra Fcap. 8vo, price 1s. 6d.

HISTORY OF ROME.

In Post 8vo, price 2s. 6d.

GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES

IN

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.

A Companion to the Latin Grammar of DR. SCHMITZ.

By G. T. H. SYKES, B.A.,

Principal of Forest House School, Woodford.

In Extra Fcap. 8vo, 254 pp., cloth, 1s. 6d.

HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.

BY F. A. LAING.

In Extra Fcap. 8vo, 250 pp., cloth, 1s. 6d

READINGS

IN

ENGLISH LITERATURE—PROSE:

BEING

SELECTIONS FROM THE BEST ENGLISH AUTHORS

FROM THE 14TH TO THE 19TH CENTURIES.

In Extra Fcap. 8vo, 264 pp., cloth, 1s. 6d.

EMINENT ENGLISH WRITERS.

WITH A BRIEF ACCOUNT OF THEIR WORKS.

BY WILLIAM LAWSON, ST. MARK'S COLLEGE, CHELSEA.

In Extra Fcap. 8vo, 256 pp., cloth, 1s. 6d.

ELOCUTION:

IN

THEORY AND PRACTICE.

BY COMSTICK & MAIR.

WM. COLLINS. SONS, & CO., LIMITED.

GLASGOW, LONDON, AND EDINBURGH.

In Post 8vo, cloth, 2s. 6d.

**GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE,
FOR MIDDLE AND HIGHER CLASS SCHOOLS.
BY LEONHARD SCHMITZ, LL.D.**

In Post 8vo, cloth, 2s. 6d.

**EXERCISES IN
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.
BY LEONHARD SCHMITZ, LL.D.**

In 12mo, cloth, 2s.

**LATIN RUDIMENTS,
WITH COPIOUS EXERCISES IN READING AND COMPOSITION.**

In 12mo, 232 pp., cloth, 2s.

**LATIN DELECTUS,
WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES AND COPIOUS VOCABULARY.**

In 12mo, 184 pp., cloth, 1s. 6d.

**CÆSAR,
WITH IMITATIVE EXERCISES, NOTES, QUESTIONS, AND VOCABULARY**

In 12mo, cloth, 2s.

**VIRGIL,
Books I., II., III., and IV. of the Aeneid,
WITH NOTES, QUESTIONS, AND VOCABULARY.**

In 12mo, cloth, 2s.

**RUDIMENTS OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE,
WITH EXERCISES AND VOCABULARY.**

**WM. COLLINS, SONS, & CO., LIMITED.
GLASGOW, LONDON, AND EDINBURGH.**

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 1s. 6d.

HISTORY OF GREECE.

BY L. SCHMITZ, LL.D.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAP.

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 1s. 6d.

HISTORY OF ROME.

BY L. SCHMITZ, LL.D.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAP.

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 2s.

HISTORY OF GERMANY.

BY SUTHERLAND MENZIES.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAP.

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 2s.

HISTORY OF FRANCE.

BY SUTHERLAND MENZIES.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAP

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 1s. 6d.

HISTORY OF INDIA.

BY W. C. PEARCE.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAP.

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 1s. 6d.—In the Press.

HISTORY OF AMERICA,

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAP.

**WM. COLLINS, SONS, & CO., LIMITED,
GLASGOW, LONDON, AND EDINBURGH.**



COLLINS' SERIES OF SCHOOL ATLASES—CONTINUED.

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY—Demy Series.

THE PRIMARY ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 s. 4.
Maps, Demy 4to, 5 by 11 inches, Stiff Cover. 1 0

THE POCKET ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps,
on Guards, Demy 8vo, cloth, 2 0

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Hemispheres. | 10 Map of the World—shewing the Constant, Periodical, and Variable Winds, &c. |
| 2 Physical Map of Europe. | 11 Map of the World—shewing the Distribution of Rain, &c. |
| 3 Physical Map of Asia. | 12 Map of the World—illustrating Earthquakes, &c |
| 4 Physical Map of Africa | 13 Map of the World—shewing the Ocean Currents, &c. |
| 5 Physical Map of North America. | 14 Map of the World—shewing the Distribution of Birds and Fishes. |
| 6 Physical Map of South America. | 15 Map of the World—shewing Distribution of Quadrupeds, &c. |
| 7 Physical Map of the British Isles. | 16 Map of the World—shewing Distribution of Plants, &c. |
| 8 Maps of the World—shewing Temperature in March, April, May, June, July, and August. | |
| 9 Maps of the World—shewing the Mean Temperature in September, October, November, December, January, and February. | |

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY—Imperial Series.

THE PORTABLE ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 20
Maps, 11 by 13 inches, mounted on Guards, Imp. 8vo, cloth, . . . 3 6

THE STUDENT'S ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 20
Maps, mounted on Guards. With Letterpress Description and Wood Engravings. By James Bryce, LL.D., F.R.G.S. Imp. 8vo, cl., 5 0

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Hemispheres—shewing proportions of Land and Water, with Length of Rivers and Heights of Mountains, &c. | 12 Map of the World—shewing the Distribution of Constant, Periodical, and Variable Winds; Limits of Trade Winds, &c. |
| 2 Physical Map of Europe—shewing Mountains and Rivers, High and Low Lands. | 13 Map of the World—shewing the proportionate distribution of Rain, &c. |
| 3 Physical Map of Asia—shewing as above. | 14 Map of the World—illustrating Earthquakes and the distribution of Volcanoes. |
| 4 Physical Map of Africa—shewing as above. | 15 Map of the World—shewing the Ocean Currents and Basins, and principal River Systems. |
| 5 Physical Map of North America—shewing as above. | 16 Map of the World—shewing the Geographical Distribution of Birds and Fishes. |
| 6 Physical Map of South America—shewing as above. | 17 Map of the World—shewing Geographical Distribution of Quadrupeds and Reptiles. |
| 7 Physical Map of the British Isles—shewing as above. | 18 Map of the World—shewing the Geographical Distribution of Plants. |
| 8 Various Sections across the Continents. | 19 Map of the World—shewing the Distribution of Mankind according to Races. |
| 9 Various Sections in the Oceans; Diagram of Suez Canal, &c. | 20 Geological Map of the British Isles. |
| 10 Maps of the World—shewing the Mean Temperature of the Air—March to August. | |
| 11 Maps of the World—shewing the Mean Temperature of the Air—September to February. | |

COLLINS' SERIES OF SCHOOL ATLASES—Continued.

HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY.

THE POCKET ATLAS OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY,	16	s. d.
Maps, $6\frac{1}{2}$ by 11 inches, mounted on Guards, Imperial 16mo, cloth,		1 6
THE CROWN ATLAS OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY,	16	
Maps, with Letterpress Description by Wm. F. Collier, LL.D., Imperial 16mo, cloth, ...	... ...	2 6
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY,		
16 Maps, with Letterpress Description by Wm. F. Collier, LL.D., 8vo, cloth, ...	... ...	3 0
1 Roman Empire, Eastern and Western, 4th Century.	8 Europe, 17th and 18th Centuries.	
2 Europe, 6th Century, shewing Settlements of the Barbarian Tribes.	9 Europe at the Peace of 1815.	
3 Europe, 9th Century, shewing Empire of Charlemagne.	10 Europe in 1870.	
4 Europe, 10th Century, at the Rise of the German Empire.	11 India, illustrating the Rise of the British Empire.	
5 Europe, 12th Century, at the Time of the Crusaders.	12 World, on Mercator's Projection, shewing Voyages of Discovery.	
6 Europe, 16th Century, at the Eve of the Reformation	13 Britain under the Romans.	
7 Germany, 16th Century, Reformation and Thirty Years' War.	14 Britain under the Saxons.	
	15 Britain after Accession of William the Conqueror.	
	16 France and Belgium, illustrating British History.	

CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

THE POCKET ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY,	15	
Maps, Imperial 16mo, $6\frac{1}{2}$ by 11 inches, cloth lettered, ...	... ...	1 6
THE CROWN ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY,	15	
Maps, with Descriptive Letterpress, by Leonhard Schmitz, LL.D., Imperial 16mo, cloth lettered, ...	... ...	2 6
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY,	15	
Maps, Imperial 8vo, with Descriptive Letterpress, by Leonhard Schmitz, LL.D., cloth lettered, ...	... ...	3 0
1 Orbis Veteribus Notus.	9 Armenia, Mesopotamia, &c.	
2 Aegyptus.	10 Asia Minor.	
3 Regnum Alexandri Magni.	11 Palestine (Temp. Christi.)	
4 Macedonia, Thracia, &c.	12 Gallia.	
5 Imperium Romanum.	13 Hispania.	
6 Graecia.	14 Germania, &c.	
7 Italia, (Septentrionalis.)	15 Britannia.	
8 Italia, (Meridionalis.)		

Historical and Classical Atlas.

THE STUDENT'S ATLAS OF HISTORICAL AND CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY,	consisting of 30	Maps as above, with Introduction, Classis Index,	F. Collier, LL.D., and on	z, LL.D., with a Copious	Index	5 0
---	-------------------------	---	----------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------	------------------------	------------



THE LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARIES